

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Child Safety</b>	<b>16</b>
Child seats . . . . .	.18
Child seat positioning . . . . .	.18
Booster seats . . . . .	.20
Installing child safety seats . . . . .	.22
Child safety locks . . . . .	.31
<b>Safety Belts</b>	<b>32</b>
Fastening the safety belts . . . . .	.34
Safety belt warning light and indicator chime . . . . .	.37
Safety belt-minder . . . . .	.38
Child restraint and safety belt maintenance . . . . .	.40
<b>Personal Safety System</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>Supplementary Restraints System</b>	<b>42</b>
Driver and passenger airbags . . . . .	.44
Knee airbag . . . . .	.45
Front passenger sensing system . . . . .	.46
Side airbags . . . . .	.50
Side curtain airbags . . . . .	.51
Crash sensors and airbag indicator . . . . .	.53
Airbag disposal . . . . .	.54
<b>Keys and Remote Control</b>	<b>55</b>
General information on radio frequencies . . . . .	.55
Remote control . . . . .	.56
Keys . . . . .	.56
Replacing a lost key or remote control . . . . .	.60

<b>Locks</b>	<b>61</b>
Locking and unlocking . . . . .	.61
Locks . . . . .	.61
Trunk release . . . . .	.67
Interior luggage compartment release . . . . .	.68
<b>Security</b>	<b>69</b>
SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system . . . . .	.69
<b>Steering Wheel</b>	<b>72</b>
Adjusting the steering wheel . . . . .	.72
Steering wheel controls . . . . .	.73
<b>Wipers and Washers</b>	<b>75</b>
Windshield wipers . . . . .	.75
Windshield washers . . . . .	.76
Rear-window wiper and washer . . . . .	.76
<b>Lighting</b>	<b>77</b>
Lighting control . . . . .	.77
Instrument lighting dimmer . . . . .	.77
Headlamp exit delay . . . . .	.78
Daytime running lamps . . . . .	.78
Turn signal control . . . . .	.78
Interior lamps . . . . .	.79
Ambient lighting . . . . .	.80
<b>Windows and Mirrors</b>	<b>81</b>
Power windows . . . . .	.81
Exterior mirrors . . . . .	.83
Interior mirrors . . . . .	.84
Moonroof . . . . .	.85
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>86</b>
Gauges . . . . .	.86
Warning lamps and indicators . . . . .	.87
Audible warnings and indicators . . . . .	.92

## Table of Contents 3

---

<b>Information Displays</b>	<b>93</b>
Multifunction display . . . . .	.94
Trip computer . . . . .	.94
Information messages . . . . .	.95
<b>Audio System</b>	<b>99</b>
AM/FM stereo with CD . . . . .	.101
AM/FM/CD/SIRIUS Satellite Radio with SYNC . . . . .	.103
Auxiliary input jack . . . . .	.108
USB port . . . . .	.109
Satellite radio information . . . . .	.109
<b>Climate Control</b>	<b>113</b>
Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . .	.113
Rear window defroster . . . . .	.116
Cabin air filter . . . . .	.117
<b>Seats</b>	<b>118</b>
Sitting in the correct position . . . . .	.118
Head restraints . . . . .	.119
Front seats . . . . .	.122
Heated seats . . . . .	.123
Rear seats . . . . .	.124
<b>Auxiliary Power Points</b>	<b>126</b>
<b>Storage Compartments</b>	<b>127</b>
Center console . . . . .	.127
<b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b>	<b>128</b>
Ignition switch . . . . .	.129
Keyless starting . . . . .	.129
Engine block heater . . . . .	.132

<b>Fuel and Refueling</b>	<b>134</b>
Fuel quality . . . . .	135
Running out of fuel . . . . .	136
Refueling . . . . .	137
Fuel consumption . . . . .	139
<b>Transmission</b>	<b>143</b>
Automatic transmission . . . . .	143
Manual transmission . . . . .	148
Hill start assist . . . . .	150
<b>Brakes</b>	<b>152</b>
Brakes . . . . .	152
Hints on driving with anti-lock brakes . . . . .	153
Parking brake . . . . .	153
<b>Traction Control</b>	<b>154</b>
Traction Control™ . . . . .	154
<b>Stability Control</b>	<b>155</b>
AdvanceTrac® . . . . .	156
<b>Cruise Control</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>Driving Aids</b>	<b>159</b>
Steering . . . . .	159
<b>Load Carrying</b>	<b>161</b>
Vehicle loading . . . . .	161
<b>Towing</b>	<b>167</b>
Trailer towing . . . . .	167
Wrecker towing . . . . .	167
Recreational towing . . . . .	168
<b>Driving Hints</b>	<b>171</b>
Economical driving . . . . .	171
Floor mats . . . . .	173

## Table of Contents

5

---

<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>175</b>
Getting roadside assistance . . . . .	.175
Hazard warning flashers . . . . .	.176
Fuel cut-off switch . . . . .	.176
Jump-starting the vehicle . . . . .	.177
<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>180</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) . . . . .	.186
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) . . . . .	.187
<b>Fuses</b>	<b>188</b>
Changing a fuse . . . . .	.188
Fuse specification chart . . . . .	.189
<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>196</b>
General information . . . . .	.196
Under hood overview . . . . .	.198
Engine oil dipstick . . . . .	.199
Engine oil check . . . . .	.199
Engine coolant check . . . . .	.200
Automatic transmission fluid check . . . . .	.202
Brake fluid check . . . . .	.203
Power steering fluid check . . . . .	.203
Fuel filter . . . . .	.203
Washer fluid check . . . . .	.204
Battery . . . . .	.204
Checking the wiper blades . . . . .	.206
Changing the wiper blades . . . . .	.207
Air filter(s) . . . . .	.208
Adjusting the headlamps . . . . .	.209
Changing a bulb . . . . .	.211
Bulb specification chart . . . . .	.218

<b>Vehicle Care</b>	<b>219</b>
Cleaning products . . . . .	.219
Cleaning the exterior . . . . .	.219
Waxing . . . . .	.221
Repairing minor paint damage . . . . .	.221
Cleaning the engine . . . . .	.221
Cleaning the windows and wiper blades . . . . .	.222
Cleaning the interior . . . . .	.222
Cleaning the instrument panel and instrument cluster lens . . . . .	.223
Cleaning leather seats . . . . .	.224
Cleaning the alloy wheels . . . . .	.224
Vehicle storage . . . . .	.225
<b>Wheels and Tires</b>	<b>228</b>
Tire care . . . . .	.228
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . .	.244
Changing a road wheel . . . . .	.248
Technical specifications . . . . .	.253
Wheel lug nut torque . . . . .	.253
<b>Capacities and Specifications</b>	<b>254</b>
Engine specifications . . . . .	.254
Engine drivebelt . . . . .	.254
Part numbers . . . . .	.258
Vehicle identification number . . . . .	.259
Vehicle certification label . . . . .	.260
Transmission code designation . . . . .	.260
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>261</b>
Accessories . . . . .	.261
<b>Ford Extended Service Plan</b>	<b>263</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance</b>	<b>266</b>
Normal scheduled maintenance and log . . . . .	.271

## Table of Contents 7

---

<b>SYNC®</b>	<b>281</b>
Pairing your phone for the first time . . . . .	.286
911 Assist™ . . . . .	.301
Vehicle Health Report . . . . .	.303
<b>Appendices</b>	<b>328</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>336</b>

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2012

**ABOUT THIS MANUAL**

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

**Note:** This manual describes a range of product features and options, sometimes before they are generally available. Therefore, you may find options in this manual that are not found on your vehicle.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so they may appear different than your vehicle.. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.







**Protecting the Environment**

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

**SYMBOL GLOSSARY**

**WARNING:** You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.











These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.









Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Safety alert		See Owner's Manual		Anti-lock braking system
	Avoid smoking, flames, or sparks		Battery		Battery acid



## Introduction

9

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Brake fluid – non petroleum base		Brake system		Cabin air filter
	Check fuel cap		Child Safety Door Lock and Unlock		Child seat lower anchor
	Child seat tether anchor		Cruise control		Do not open when hot
	Engine air filter		Engine coolant		Engine coolant temperature
	Engine oil		Explosive gas		Fan warning
	Fasten safety belt		Front airbag		Front fog lamps
	Fuel pump reset		Fuse compartment		Hazard warning flasher
	Heated rear window		Interior luggage compartment release		Jack
	Lighting control		Low tire pressure warning		Maintain correct fluid level
	Panic alarm		Parking aid system		Parking brake system

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Power steering fluid		Power windows front and rear		Power window lockout
	Service engine soon		Side airbag		Stability control
	Windshield defrost and demist		Windshield washer and wiper		

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

### Event Data Recording

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;

- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was travelling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

**Note:** Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® chapter for more information.

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC<sup>®</sup> supplement for more information.**

#### **CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65**



**WARNING:** Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

#### **PERCHLORATE MATERIAL**

**Note:** Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners, and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate) for more information.

#### **FORD CREDIT (U.S. ONLY)**

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as access Account Manager, please go to [www.fordcredit.com](http://www.fordcredit.com).

---

**REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION**

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

**Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs**

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

***Collision Repairs***

We hope that you never experience a collision but, accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

***Warranty on Replacement Parts***

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

**SPECIAL NOTICES****New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Manual* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

**Special Instructions**

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

**Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles**

**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Manual carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate your vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

**Using your vehicle with a snowplow****Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

**Using your vehicle as an ambulance****Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

**MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT**

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

<b>Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children</b>		
	<b>Child size, height, weight, or age</b>	<b>Recommended restraint type</b>
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).



<b>Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children</b>		
	<b>Child size, height, weight, or age</b>	<b>Recommended restraint type</b>
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in. (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

**CHILD SEATS**

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for Infants, toddlers or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)

**CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.




**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and


warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.





**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap

while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	

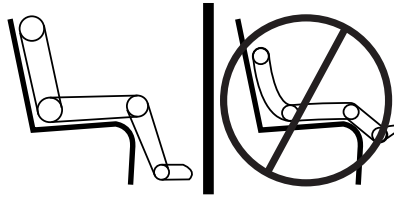
**Note:** The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See the *Seats* chapter for information on head restraints.

**BOOSTER SEATS**

**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?

- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

**Types of Booster Seats**

- Backless booster seats

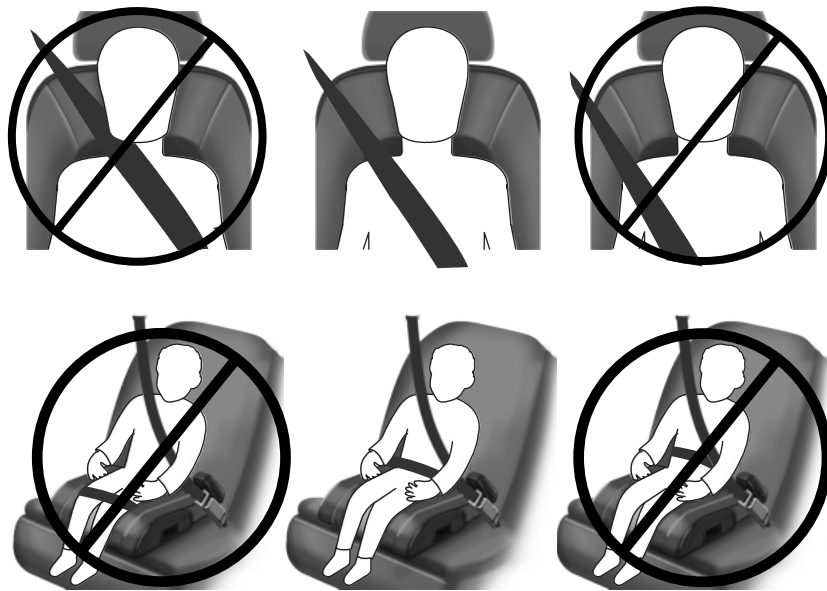
If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### INSTALLING CHILD SAFETY SEATS

#### Using lap and shoulder belts



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

**NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag.

If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



**WARNING:** Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

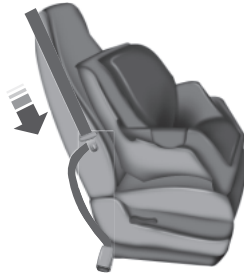
- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat back in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

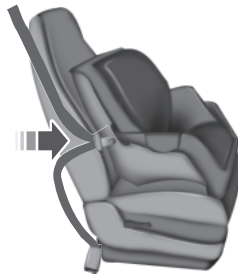
**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.



1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



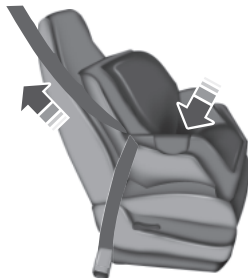


5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

**Note:** The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

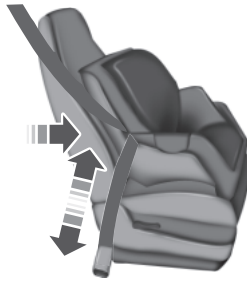
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt.

This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Using tether straps* later in this chapter.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place.

To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

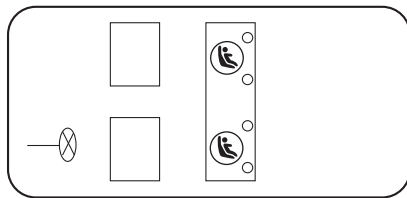
#### Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

**WARNING:** Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.



Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Using tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

**Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)**

**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in. (28 cm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in. (46 cm) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

**Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats**

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

**Using Tether Straps**

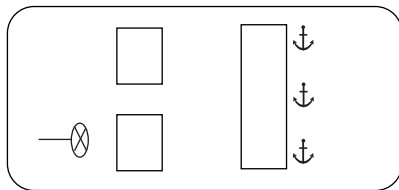
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

Four door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located under a cover marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).

Five door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located on the back panel of the rear seat, marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).



The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

**Note:** If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

**Four door**

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



3. Open the tether anchor cover.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

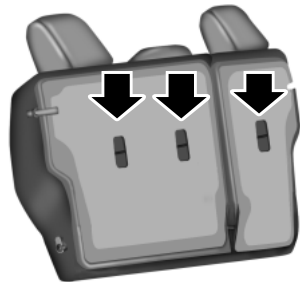
If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

#### Five door

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

- Driver side: turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.
- Passenger side: turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

**PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION**

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.





**WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder safety belts.
- Shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions
- Safety belt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



- Safety belt warning light and chime. Refer to *Safety belt warning light and indicator chime* later in this chapter.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. Refer to *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* in the *Supplemental Restraint System* chapter.

The safety belt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

**FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS**

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



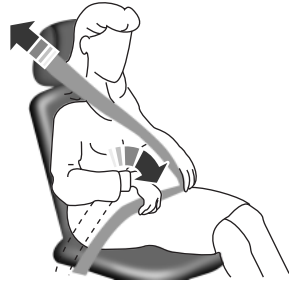
1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

**Restraint of Pregnant Women**

**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

### Safety Belt Locking Modes

**!** **WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

**!** **WARNING: BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED** if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

#### **Vehicle sensitive mode**

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

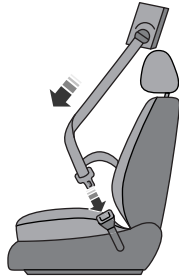
In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

**Automatic locking mode**

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

**When to use the automatic locking mode**

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. Refer to the *Child Safety* chapter.

**How to use the automatic locking mode**

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

**How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.


**Safety Belt Extension Assembly**

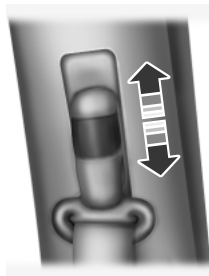
**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

**SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT**

 **WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.



Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

**SAFETY BELT WARNING LIGHT AND INDICATOR CHIME**



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

**Conditions of operation**

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

**SAFETY BELT-MINDER®**

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light when the driver's or front passenger's seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

<b>If...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

If...	Then...
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

**Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder® Feature (If Equipped)**



**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

**Note:** The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated and activated independently. When deactivating or activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.

*Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation and activation programming procedure.*

**Note:** The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features must be disabled and enabled separately. Both cannot be disabled and enabled during the same key cycle.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated or activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission selector lever is in position **P** (automatic transmission) or **N** (manual transmission).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Turn the ignition on. DO NOT START THE ENGINE.

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (approximately one minute).

- Step 3 must be completed within 30 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state.

- After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.

4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled.

#### **CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE**

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Cleaning the Interior* in the *Vehicle Care* chapter.



### **PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM™**

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor
- Front passenger sensing system
- Passenger airbag off/on indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.


### **How does the Personal Safety System work?**


The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.


## 42 Supplementary Restraints System


---


### PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION


 **WARNING:** Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.


 **WARNING:** Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

 **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

 **WARNING:** If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic. While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

#### **SOS POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM™**


The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag equipped on your vehicle such as front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®.


The horn and lamps will turn off when:

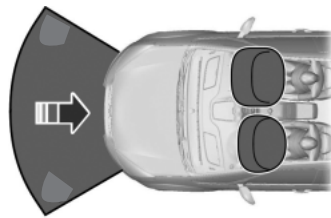
- the hazard control button is pressed
- the panic button is pressed on the remote entry transmitter, or
- the vehicle runs out of power.

## 44 Supplementary Restraints System

### DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS


 **WARNING:** Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.




The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules
-  • Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. Refer to *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* later in this chapter.
- Front passenger sensing system.

### Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

 **WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in. (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.

- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

### Children and Airbags



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag.

If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### KNEE AIRBAG

The knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. The system works along with the driver's front airbag to help reduce injury to the legs. When the driver's airbag activates in a collision, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



To know if the knee airbag is operating properly, refer to *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* later in this chapter.

## 46            **Supplementary Restraints System**

---

### **FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM**



**WARNING:** Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.  
Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:  
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped).  
Check the passenger airbag off or pass airbag off indicator lamp for proper airbag status.  
Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the passenger seat sensing system.



**WARNING:** Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

**PASS  
AIRBAG  
OFF**

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off or pass airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located at the bottom central portion of the instrument panel below the Hazard warning indicator and above the climate controls.

**Note:** The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the on position to confirm it is functional.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small or medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger seat.

**Note:** When the passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

## 48 Supplementary Restraints System

---

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the passenger airbag off or pass airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

<b>Occupant</b>	<b>Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp</b>	<b>Passenger Airbag</b>
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.



If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



To know if the front passenger sensing system is operating properly, refer to *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* in this chapter.

**If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:**

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

## 50      **Supplementary Restraints System**

---

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* section of this owner's guide.

### **SIDE AIRBAGS**



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



**WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

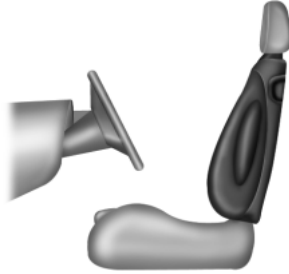


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.



The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the seatback of the driver and front passenger seats.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. Refer to *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* later in this chapter.

- Front passenger sensing system

**Note:** The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty, unbuckled passenger seat.

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

### SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying side curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.





**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.




**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the side curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing side curtain airbags. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

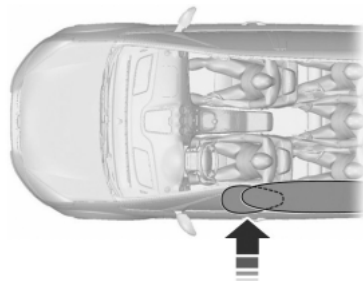
## 52 Supplementary Restraints System

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and side curtain airbag is provided.


 **WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the side curtain airbag.

 **WARNING:** If the side curtain airbags have deployed, **the side curtain airbags will not function again. The side curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the side curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

A side curtain airbag will deploy during significant side collisions. The side curtain airbags are mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain lateral collisions, the side curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle will be activated. The side curtain airbags are designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions.



The system consists of the following:

- Side curtain airbags fitted above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow side air curtain deployment.
-  Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. Refer to *Crash sensors and Airbag Indicator* later in this chapter.

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the back seats. The side curtain airbags will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the side curtain airbags included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side curtain airbags.

### CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

The vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM) which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the side curtain airbags. Based on the type of collision (frontal impact or side impact) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Refer to *Warning lamps and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

## 54            **Supplementary Restraints System**

---

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.
- The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, and may also activate when a side curtain deploys.
- The knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel when the passenger airbag activates in a collision.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not rollovers, rear impacts, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

### **AIRBAG DISPOSAL**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags **MUST BE** disposed of by qualified personnel.

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The remote control allows you to:

- remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors
- arm and disarm the anti-theft system
- remotely open the luggage compartment
- unlock the doors without actively using a key or remote control (intelligent access only).

### GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

The remote control complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

### Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when commanded (either by touching the inside of the driver door or front passenger exterior door handle, by activating the exterior power liftgate button, or a button on the transmitter itself). If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area, or if the transmitter battery is low, it may be necessary to mechanically unlock your door. The mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key can be used to open the driver's door in this situation. Refer to *Remote Control* in this chapter for more information on the location and use of the mechanical key blade.

**REMOTE CONTROL****Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (If Equipped)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters. The key blade is used to start the vehicle and unlock or lock the driver's door from outside the vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



**Note:** Your vehicle's keys were issued with a security label that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

**Intelligent access key (if equipped)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with two intelligent access keys which operate the power locks. The key must be in the vehicle to activate the push button start system.





The key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that can be used to unlock the driver door. To release the mechanical key blade, press the release buttons on the edge of the transmitter and remove the key blade.



**Note:** Your vehicle's back-up keys were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

**Replacing the Battery**

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

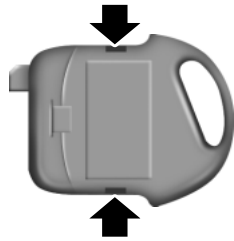
**Note:** Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

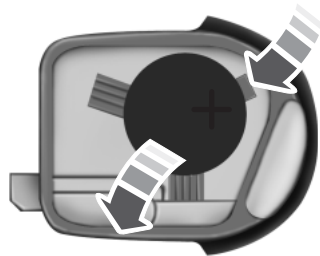
**Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (IKT)**



1. Carefully insert a flat object (e.g. a screwdriver) into the recess on the back of the key and remove the key blade.



2. Release the retaining clips with a flat object and separate the two halves of the transmitter.

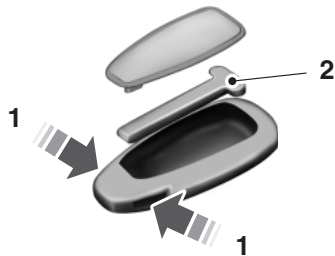


3. Carefully pry out the battery with a flat object. Be careful not to touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the flat object.

4. Insert the new battery with the + facing upwards.

5. Snap the two halves of the transmitter back together.

#### **Intelligent Access key (IA key)**

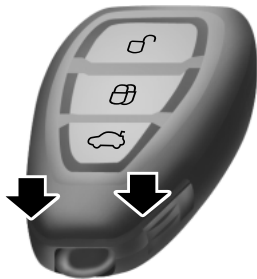


1. Press and hold the push buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade.



3. Twist a flat object in the position shown to separate the two halves of the transmitter.



4. Carefully insert a flat object in the position shown to open the transmitter.

5. Carefully pry out the battery with a flat object.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the transmitter back together.
8. Install the key blade.

### Car Finder

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn signals will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

**REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL**

Replacement or additional keys or remote controls can be purchased from your authorized dealer. Your dealer can program the transmitters to your vehicle or you may be able to program them yourself. Refer to the *Security* chapter for information on programming your keys.

**Reprogramming Your Remote Control**

**Note:** You can only program an integrated keyhead transmitter. See your authorized dealer to have an intelligent access transmitter programmed.

You must have all remote controls available before beginning this procedure. If all remote controls are not present during programming, the ones missing will no longer operate the vehicle.

To reprogram the remote control:

1. Turn the ignition switch from off to run four times in rapid succession (within six seconds), with the fourth turn ending in off. If the program mode is successfully entered, a chime will sound.

**Note:** If no action is taken within 10 seconds after a transmitter has been programmed, the programming sequence ends.

2. Within 10 seconds, press any button on the transmitter to be programmed. A chime will sound to confirm that the transmitter is programmed. Repeat this step for each transmitter.

**Note:** There is no chime or any other confirmation upon exiting the programming mode.

3. Exiting the programming mode is accomplished if one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is turned on.
- Ten seconds have passed since entering the programming mode or since the last transmitter was programmed.
- The maximum number (eight) of transmitters has been programmed.

**LOCKING AND UNLOCKING**

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock the vehicle.

**Power Door Locks**

Type 1



Type 2

The power door lock control is located on the instrument panel near the radio.

Press the control to lock/unlock the doors. When the light or lock symbol on the button is on, it indicates that all doors and the trunk are locked. When the light is off it indicates one or more doors are unlocked.

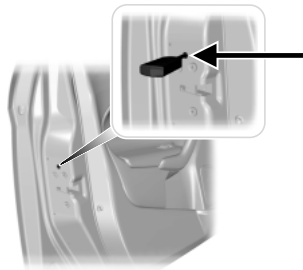
***Rear Door Unlocking and Opening***

Pull the interior door release handle twice to unlock/open the rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull will unlatch the door.

**Central Locking and Unlocking**

To centrally lock/unlock all doors (from the driver's side only) using the key from the outside when they are closed:

- Turn the key counterclockwise to lock all doors. The turn signal lamps will flash twice.
- Turn the key clockwise once to unlock the driver's door or twice to unlock all doors. The turn signal lamps will flash once.



If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

On the driver's side, turn the key clockwise to lock. On the passenger's side, turn the key counterclockwise to lock.

### Remote Control

The remote control can be used any time the vehicle is not running.

#### ***Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)***



Press the button to unlock the driver's door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate the unlocking mode was changed. The unlocking mode will be applied to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access (if equipped).

Intelligent access at the driver's door will unlock all doors when two-stage unlocking is disabled.

#### ***Locking the Doors***



Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn signals will illuminate if all the doors and the liftgate/trunk are closed.

**Note:** If any door or the liftgate/trunk is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles equipped with an anti-theft alarm, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

**Opening the Luggage Compartment**



Press twice (within 3 seconds) to open the luggage compartment.

**Note:** This feature will not operate when the engine is running and vehicle speed is more than 4 mph (7 km/h).

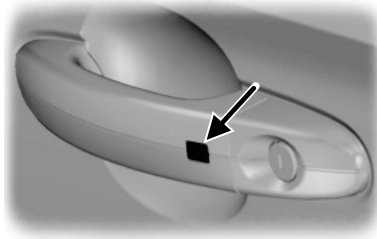
Ensure that the trunk is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. Failure to properly latch the trunk may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

**Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)**

The intelligent access key must be within 3 feet (1 meter) of the vehicle.

**At the Front Doors**

Pull a front exterior door handle. The door will unlock and can be opened.



Press and hold the door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

**At the Luggage Compartment**



Press the exterior release button above the license plate.

**Delayed Locking**

If you try to electrically lock the doors while they are open, they will not lock until the doors are closed. This feature only works when smart locks are not active. See *Smart locks* in this section for more information

**Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter**

This feature helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock if your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked by pressing the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, the vehicle can be locked by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

**Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)**

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the power door lock control (with the door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), after you close the door the vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment. If an intelligent access key is found inside the vehicle, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will chirp, indicating that the intelligent access key is inside.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside the vehicle, you can lock your vehicle after all doors are closed by pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key or touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock the vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if:

- the ignition is on, or
- the ignition is off and the vehicle is not in P (Park).



**Autolock (if equipped)**

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors are closed,
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 5 mph (7 km/h).

If a door(s) is unlocked, the autolock feature will repeat when:

- the vehicle slows below 5 mph (7 km/h) and then attains a speed greater than 5 mph (7 km/h).

**Autounlock (If Equipped)**

If the doors have been autolocked, the doors will autounlock only when:

- the ignition is on,
- all doors are closed,
- the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for more than two seconds,
- the vehicle comes to a stop,
- the ignition is turned off or to accessory,
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being switched from on to off or accessory.

**Note:** If you use the power door lock button to lock the doors before an autolock event, the doors will not autounlock.

***Deactivating and Activating Autolock or Autounlock***

**Note:** When programming the autolock feature, carry out the following steps within 30 seconds or the procedure needs to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait 30 seconds between programming sessions.

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press the power door lock control three times.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Press the power door lock control three times.

5. Turn the ignition on. The module is now in programming mode.

**Note:** A chime sounds as acknowledgement that the programming mode has been entered. The safety belt must be engaged otherwise the Belt-Minder® chime will take priority over other chimes.

6. Once in programming mode, the autolock or autounlock feature can be programmed independently of each other.

- To program the autolock feature, press the power door lock control for greater than two seconds and release. Each long press of the power door lock control toggles the state of the autolocking feature between enabled and disabled. A chime sounds when the feature is enabled or disabled.
- To program the autounlock feature, press the power door lock control for less than 1 second and release. Each short press of the power door lock control toggles the state of the autounlocking feature between enabled and disabled. A chime sounds when the feature is enabled or disabled.

7. Turn the ignition off to exit programming. If a setting was toggled, a chime will be heard.

### **Illuminated Entry**

The interior lamps illuminate for 25 seconds when:

- the vehicle is unlocked by any method other than the interior power door lock control.
- a door has been opened or closed.

The lamps will turn off:

- if the ignition is turned on.
- if the vehicle is locked by any method other than the interior power door lock control.
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

**Illuminated Exit**

The interior lamps and parking lamps will illuminate for 25 seconds when:

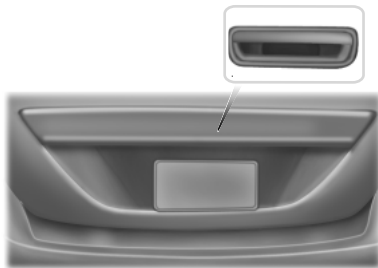
- the ignition is turned off.
- an IKT is removed from, or reinserted into, the ignition.

The lamps will turn off:

- if the ignition is turned off.
- if the vehicle is locked by any method other than the power door lock control.
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

**Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)**


If you shut off the engine and leave the ignition in the on or accessory mode, the ignition will shut off after 30 minutes.


**TRUNK RELEASE**

To open the trunk with the outside release button:

1. Unlock the trunk with the remote control or power door lock control. The trunk will unlock when you press the release button if the intelligent access transmitter is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the trunk.
2. Press the release button located above the license plate.

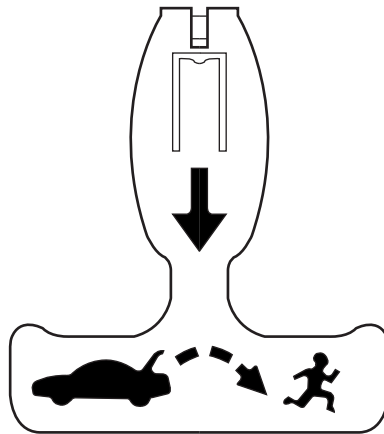
**INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE (4-DOOR ONLY)**

 **WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.



The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.

**SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM**

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

**Automatic Arming**

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition off.

**Automatic Disarming**

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms the vehicle.

**Replacement Keys**

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start systems, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock® coded keys (integrated keyhead transmitters only) are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

***Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter or SecuriLock® Coded Key***

**Note:** A maximum of eight coded keys can be programmed to your vehicle; all eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock® coded keys to your vehicle. To program the remote control functions, see *Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control* in the *Keys and Remote Control* chapter.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock® keys.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See your authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Turn the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of turning the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Turn the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Turn the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of turning the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Turn the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine.

If it was not programmed successfully, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

Wait 20 seconds and then repeat this procedure from Step 1 to program an additional key.

---

***Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key***

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

**ANTI-THEFT ALARM (IF EQUIPPED)**

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key or the remote control.

The park and turn lamps will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

**Arming the alarm**

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

**Disarming the system**

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

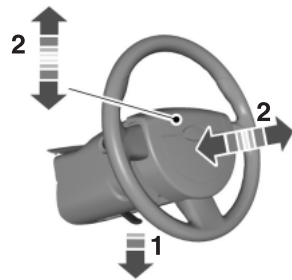
- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Unlock the doors with a key. Turn the key full travel (toward the front of the vehicle) to ensure the alarm disarms.
- Turn the ignition to the on or start position with a programmed coded ignition key.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 20 second pre-armed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

**ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL**

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. Refer to *Sitting In the Correct Position* in the *Seats* chapter.



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



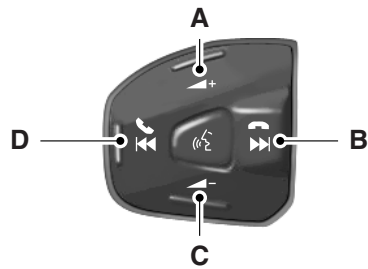
3. Lock the steering column.



**AUDIO CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

Select the required source on the audio unit.

The following functions can be operated with the control:



- A. Volume up
- B. Seek up or next
- C. Volume down
- D. Seek down or previous

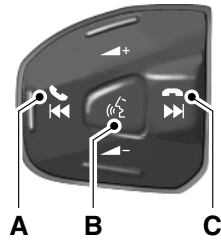
**Seek, Next or Previous**

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

**VOICE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

- A. Receive a call
- B. Voice recognition
- C. End a call

Refer to the *SYNC*® chapter.

**CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

Refer to the *Cruise Control* chapter.



**WINDSHIELD WIPERS**

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering car wash.

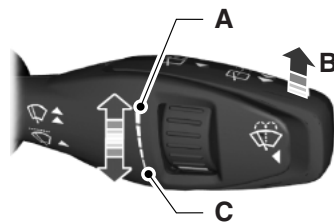
**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that doesn't resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washer before wiping a dry windshield.



- A. Single wipe
- B. Intermittent wipe
- C. Normal wipe
- D. High-speed wipe

**Intermittent Wipe**



- A. Short wipe interval
- B. Intermittent wipe
- C. Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

**WINDSHIELD WASHERS**

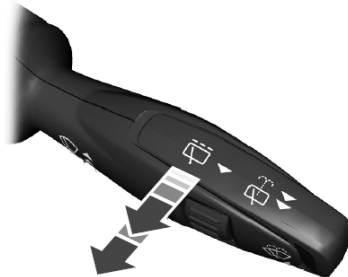
**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



The washer will spray for as long as the lever is pressed in. After you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

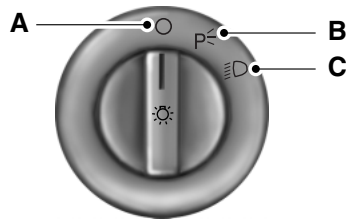
**REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS****Rear Window Wiper**

Pull the lever toward you for intermittent wiping.

**Rear Window Washers**

Pull the lever past the intermittent position to operate the washers.

**LIGHTING CONTROL**



- A. Off
- B. Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C. Headlamps

**High Beams**



Pull the lever fully past the detent to activate. Pull the lever fully again to deactivate.

**Headlamp Flasher**

Pull the lever toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.

**INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER**




Press repeatedly or press and hold until the desired level is reached.

**HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY**

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed..

You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

**DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)**

 **WARNING:** Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

The system switches the headlamps on in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or parking lamp position.
3. Make sure the transmission selector lever is not in position P.

**DIRECTION INDICATORS**

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

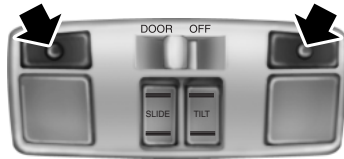


**Note:** When changing lanes, the turn signal indicator can be programmed to flash either one or three times when the stalk is tapped. See *Multifunction display* in the *Instrument cluster* section for more information.

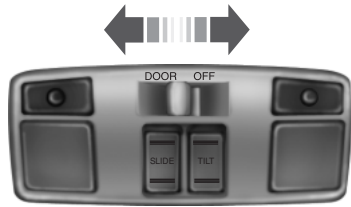
**INTERIOR LAMPS**

**Front dome and map lamps**

Press the buttons to switch the map lamps on and off.



The dome lamp switch has two modes:



- OFF: The dome lamps will not come on when the doors are opened.
- DOOR: The dome lamps come on when a door is opened.

**Rear dome and map lamps**

Press the buttons to switch the map lamps on and off.



**Battery Saver**

The battery saver feature will switch off the interior lamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the (off) position and one of the vehicle doors has been opened.

**Note:** The battery saver feature will turn off the map lamps after 30 minutes if left in the on position.

**AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)**

Illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located on the instrument panel.

Press and release the control to cycle through the color choices plus the off state.



The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:


- You switch the ignition on.
- You switch the headlamps on.
- The outside ambient light level is low.


The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- You lock your vehicle.
- The accessory delay timer expires.

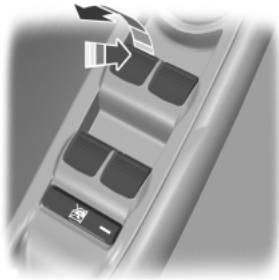


### POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

**Note:** You may hear a rumbling noise when one or both of the rear windows are open. Lower a front window slightly to reduce this noise.



Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

**Window Lock**

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls.

**Bounce-Back (If Equipped)**

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

***Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature***

Proceed as follows to override this protection function when there is a resistance, e.g. in the winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The bounce-back function is disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will override the resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

***Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature***

**WARNING:** The bounce-back function remains deactivated until you have reset the memory.

You must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window after the battery has been disconnected.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch

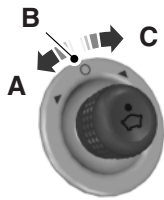
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.



- A. Left-hand mirror
- B. Off
- C. Right-hand mirror

To adjust your mirrors:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust.
2. Move the control in the direction you want to tilt the mirror.
3. Return the control to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

### Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink when the turn signal is activated.

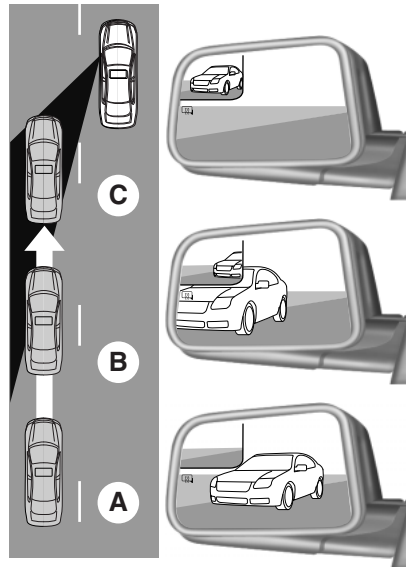
### Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.



The approaching vehicle's image is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). Its image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

### INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.


Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.


### Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

**MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)**

 **WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

 **WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The sunscreen can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is closed.



The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console.

**Opening and Closing the Moonroof**

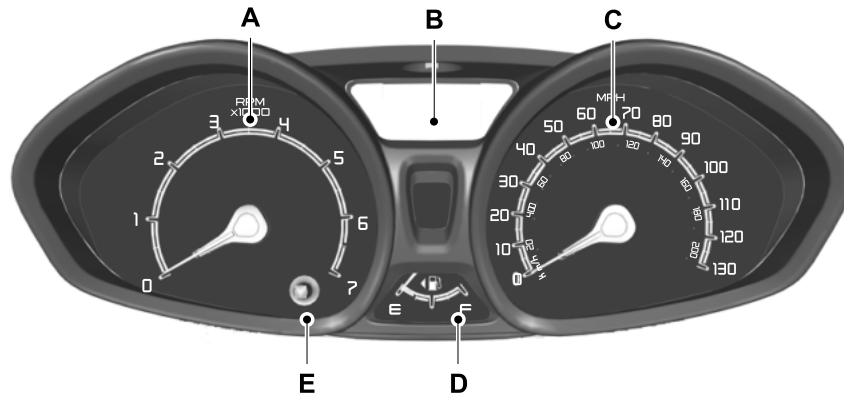
Press and release the rear of the SLIDE control to open the moonroof. The sunscreen, if closed, will automatically open prior to opening the moonroof.

Press and hold the front of the SLIDE control to close the moonroof.

**Venting the Moonroof**

Press and hold the rear of the TILT control to vent the moonroof. Press and hold the front of the TILT control to close the moonroof.

## GAUGES



- A. Tachometer
- B. Information Display and Engine Coolant Temperature gauge
- C. Speedometer
- D. Fuel Gauge
- E. Trip Reset (if equipped)

**Information Display****Odometer**

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has travelled.

**Outside air temperature**

Shows the outside air temperature.

**Trip Computer**

See *Trip Computer* in *Information Displays*.

### Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

A digital display that shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

### Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.

#### Airbag – Front



If it fails to illuminate on startup, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.

#### Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Anti-Theft System**

Flashes when the anti-theft system has been activated.

**Battery**

If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Brake System**

It will illuminate when the parking brake is engaged and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Cruise Control (If Equipped)**

It will illuminate when you switch this feature on.

**Direction Indicator**

Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**Door Ajar**

Displays when the ignition is in the on position and any door is not completely closed.

**Engine Coolant Temperature**

Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Engine Oil**

If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Fasten Safety Belt**

It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt.

**High Beam**

It will illuminate when the headlamp high beam is switched on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

**Hill Start Assistance (If Equipped):**

Displays when using hill start assist and it is not available.

**Information**

It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. .

**Low Fuel Level**

It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or near empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

**Low Tire Pressure Warning**

It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

The lamp also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Oil Change Reminder**

It will illuminate when the engine oil life has expired. Refer to Oil life monitoring system reset later in this chapter.

**Overdrive Cancel and Grade Assist (If Equipped)**

It will illuminate when you turn off the overdrive function of the transmission and switch on the grade assist function.

**Powertrain Malfunction**

Displays when the engine has defaulted to a limp-home operation or when a transmission problem has been detected and shifting may be restricted. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**Service Engine Soon**

If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD)* in the *Fuel and Refueling* chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

**Note:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Fuel and Refueling* chapter.

**Shift Indicator (If Equipped)**

It will illuminate when the manual transmission should be shifted to a higher gear, to maximize fuel economy.

**Stability Control System**

It will flash when the system is active. It will illuminate when you switch the ignition on to confirm it is functional. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

**Stability Control System Off**

It will illuminate when you switch off the system. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

**AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS****Key In Ignition Warning Chime**

Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

Sounds when the keyless vehicle is in RUN and the driver's door is opened (if equipped).


**Headlamps On Warning Chime**

Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

**Parking Brake On Warning Chime**

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

Various systems can be programmed using the audio unit controls.

**Controls**



Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.  
 Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.  
 Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.  
 Hold the left arrow button pressed at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).  
 Press the OK button to choose and confirm a setting.

Menu		
Audio	SCV	
	Sound	
	Occupancy Mode	
	DSP Equalizer	
	RDS	
Vehicle	Traction Control	On/Off
	Chimes	Warning
		Info
	Lane Change Indicator	One or Three Flashes
Clock	Set Time	
	Set Date	
	12/24H Mode	

Menu	
Display	Units of measure
	Language
Messages	
Compass (if equipped)	If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, the compass heading is displayed to the left of the clock in the upper portion of the multifunction display.

### Trip Computer (if equipped)



Press the end of the lever, located on the left side of the steering wheel to scroll through the displays.

To reset the trip odometer and average speed, scroll to the required display and press and hold the end of the multifunction lever.

The trip computer includes the following information displays:

#### **mi (km) TRIP — Trip odometer**

Registers the distance of individual journeys.

#### **mi (km) TO E — Distance to empty (if equipped)**

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

#### **AVG MPG (l/100km) — Average fuel consumption (if equipped):**

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

**Note:** After resetting, the display will show two dashes for several seconds while it recalculates a new value.

#### **AVG MPH (KM/H) — Average speed (if equipped)**

Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.


**INFORMATION MESSAGES**

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.






**i** : The message indicator will illuminate when there is a new message stored.



Message	Warning Lamp at Instrument Cluster	System
<b>ABS MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>	(ABS)	ABS
<b>ESP OFF</b>	—	ABS
<b>ESP MALFUNCTION NEXT SERVICE</b>	—	ABS
<b>BRAKE SYSTEM MALFUNCTION STOP SAFELY</b>	BRAKE or (!)	Brakes
<b>ALARM SYSTEM MALFUNCTION NEXT SERVICE</b>	—	Anti-theft security system
<b>INTERIOR SCAN DEACTIVATED</b>	—	Anti-theft security system
<b>IMMOBILIZER MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>	—	Anti-theft security system
<b>ALARM TRIGGERED CHECK VEHICLE</b>	—	Anti-theft security system
<b>LEFT/RIGHT INDICATOR MALFUNCTION CHANGE BULB</b>	—	Lights
<b>HILL START ASSIST NOT AVAILABLE</b>	(S)	Transmission
<b>STEERING LOCK ENGAGED TURN STEERING WHEEL</b>	—	Passive Entry/Passive Start

## Information Displays

Message	Warning Lamp at Instrument Cluster	System
<b>STEERING MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>	—	Passive Entry/Passive Start
<b>STEERING MALFUNCTION STOP SAFELY</b>	—	Passive Entry/Passive Start
<b>POWER STEERING MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>	—	Power Steering
<b>KEY NOT DETECTED</b>	—	Passive entry/passive start system
<b>TURN IGNITION OFF USE POWER BUTTON</b>	—	Passive entry/passive start system
<b>KEY OUTSIDE CAR</b>	—	Passive entry/passive start system
<b>KEY BATTERY LOW REPLACE BATTERY</b>	—	Passive entry/passive start system
<b>TO START PRESS BRAKE</b>	—	Passive Entry/Passive Start
<b>CLOSE TRUNK OR USE SPARE KEY</b>	—	Trunk
<b>TO START PRESS CLUTCH</b>	—	Passive Entry/Passive Start
<b>ENGINE MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>		Engine
<b>TRANSMISSION MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>	—	Transmission
<b>TRANSMISSION HOT STOP SAFELY</b>	—	Transmission




Message	Warning Lamp at Instrument Cluster	System
<b>TRANSMISSION HOT STOP OR SPEED UP</b>	—	Transmission
<b>USE BRAKE STOP SAFELY</b>	—	Transmission
<b>TRANSMISSION HOT WAIT X MIN</b>	—	Transmission
<b>TRANSMISSION HOT WAIT...</b>	—	Transmission
<b>TRANSMISSION READY</b>	—	Transmission
<b>HILL START ASSIST ACTIVE</b>	—	Transmission
<b>HILL START ASSIST OFF</b>	—	Transmission
<b>VEHICLE NOT IN PARK SELECT P</b>	—	Starting/Transmission
<b>VEHICLE NOT IN PARK SELECT P</b>	—	Starting/Transmission
<b>DOOR OPEN APPLY BRAKE</b>	—	Doors
<b>X DOOR OPEN</b>		Doors
<b>TRUNK OPEN</b>		Doors
<b>HOOD OPEN</b>		Hood
<b>AIRBAG MALFUNCTION SERVICE NOW</b>		Airbag
<b>ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE</b>		Engine Oil (See <i>Oil life monitoring system reset</i> later in this section)

Message	Warning Lamp at Instrument Cluster	System
<b>ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP SAFELY</b>		Engine Oil
<b>BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW SERVICE NOW</b>	BRAKE or 	Brakes
<b>CHECK FUEL FILL INLET</b>	—	Fuel

#### Oil life monitoring system reset

To reset the oil service light and clear the oil change message after servicing, use the following procedure:

1. Begin with the ignition off.
2. Turn the key to the accessory position for keyed vehicles and for push button start vehicles press the Start/Stop button once quickly. DO NOT attempt to start the engine.
3. Press the accelerator and brake pedals fully for 20 seconds.
4. **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE** and  will display.
5. Turn the vehicle off. The message and lights will be cleared.

## GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio reception factors	
<b>Distance/Strength</b>	The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
<b>Terrain</b>	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
<b>Station overload</b>	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result the audio system muting.

### CD/CD Player Information

**Note:** CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

**Note:** CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

**Note:** Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only, wiping from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.

### **MP3 Track and Folder Structure**

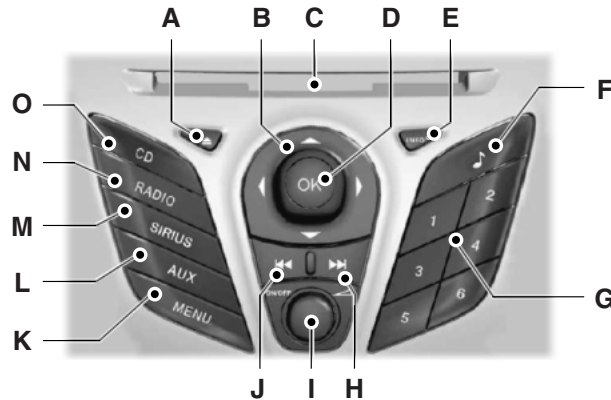
Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. **Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files are played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 files in the current folder.

## AM/FM STEREO or AM/FM STEREO CD



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Your audio system can operate for up to one hour after the ignition is turned off. Press the ON/OFF control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.

- A. **Eject:** Ejects a CD.
- B. **Cursor arrows:** Scroll through on-screen audio system choices.
- C. **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D. **OK:** Confirm on-screen selections after pressing MENU.
- E. **INFO:** Press to access any available radio or CD information.

**F. SOUND:**

- Press to access Treble, Bass, Middle, Fade (if equipped) and Balance menu options.
- Use the up and down arrow buttons to see the various options. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to increase or decrease the levels. Press OK to set or press MENU to exit.
- Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

**G. Memory presets:** Store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

**H. SEEK:**

- Press and release to go to the next track or preset radio station.
- Press and hold to fast forward through the current track or to next strong radio station (manually advances between station presets or through radio stations).

**I. ON/OFF:**

- Press the power control to turn the system on and off.
- Turn to adjust the volume.

**J. SEEK:**

- Press and release to go to the previous track or preset radio station.
- Press and hold to reverse through the current track or to previous strong radio station (manually reverses between station presets or through radio stations).

**K. MENU:** Access different audio system features. See *Menu structure* information later in this section.

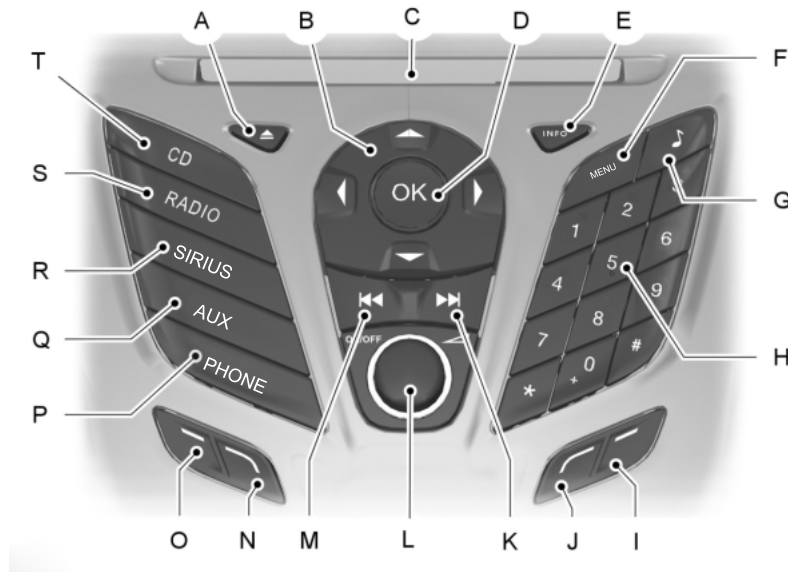
**L. AUX:** Press to access LINE IN (auxiliary input jack) mode.

**M. SIRIUS:** Press repeatedly to access SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 satellite radio modes (if equipped).

**N. RADIO:** Access different radio features. See *Menu structure* information later in this section.

**O. CD:** Access different CD features. See *Menu structure* information later in this section.

AM/FM/CD/SIRIUS SATELLITE RADIO WITH SYNC®



**! WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Your audio system can operate for up to one hour after the ignition is turned off. Press the ON/OFF control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.

**Note:** Some features such as SIRIUS satellite radio may not be available in your location. Check with your authorized dealer.

A. **Eject:** Ejects a CD.

B. **Cursor arrows:** Scroll through on-screen audio system choices.

- C. **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D. **OK:** Confirm on-screen selections after pressing MENU.
- E. **INFO:** Press to access any available radio or CD information.
- F. **MENU:** Access different audio system features. See *Menu structure* information later in this section.
- G. **SOUND:**
- Press to access Treble, Bass, Middle, Fade (if equipped) and Balance menu options.
  - Use the up and down arrow buttons to see the various options. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to increase or decrease the levels. Press OK to set or press MENU to exit.
  - Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- H. **Number block:** Store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.
- **In radio mode,** store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.
  - **In CD mode,** select a track.
  - **In phone mode,** enter a phone number.
- I. **Function Button 4:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- J. **Function Button 3:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- K. **SEEK:**
- Press and release to go to the next track or preset radio station.
  - Press and hold to fast forward through the current track or to next strong radio station (manually advances between station presets or through radio stations).
- L. **ON/OFF:**
- Press the power control to turn the system on and off.
  - Turn to adjust the volume.
- M. **SEEK:**
- Press and release to go to the previous track or preset radio station.
  - Press and hold to reverse through the current track or to previous strong radio station (manually reverses between station presets or through radio stations).
- N. **Function Button 2:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.



- O. **Function Button 1:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P. **PHONE:** Access the phone features of the SYNC® system. Refer to the SYNC® chapter for more information.
- Q. **AUX:** Access the media features of the SYNC® system. Refer to the SYNC® chapter for more information.
- R. **SIRIUS:** Access different SIRIUS satellite radio features by pressing SIRIUS, then MENU. Refer to *Menu structure* later in this section.
- S. **RADIO:** Access different radio features by pressing RADIO, then MENU. Refer to *Menu structure* later in this section.
- T. **CD:** Access different CD features by pressing CD, then MENU. Refer to *Menu structure* later in this section.

**Setting the clock**

Press the H or M buttons on the outside of the multifunction display to access the clock settings. Once you are in the clock setting, press the H or M button repeatedly until the desired number appears. Press OK to confirm and close.

**MENU STRUCTURE**

**Note:** Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different, not at all or on-screen and able to be selected using the function buttons.

Press MENU.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options (if active).


Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.


<b>RADIO</b>	
<b>Manual tune</b>	Use the left and right arrows to go up or down the frequency band
<b>Scan</b>	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
<b>Autostore</b>	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM and FM frequency bands.


<b>RADIO</b>	
<b>PTY/Set category</b>	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (rock, pop, country, etc.).
<b>RBDS/RDS</b>	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category.
<b>SIRIUS</b>	
<b>Scan</b>	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
<b>Show ESN</b>	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS® to activate, modify or track your account.
<b>Channel guide</b>	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press OK to select Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once a channel is skipped or locked, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.
<b>Set category</b>	Select to view channel categories (pop, rock, news, etc.). If you select a category, seek and scan functions will only stop on channels in that category.
<b>Alerts</b>	Select to enable/disable an alert for a song, artist or team. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
<b>Unlock all stations</b>	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
<b>Skip no stations</b>	Use to unskip any channels you previously skipped.
<b>Parental lock (PIN)</b>	Select to create a PIN which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

<b>AUDIO</b>	
<b>SCV level</b>	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between off and +7.
<b>Sound</b>	Allows you to adjust sound settings such as treble, bass, middle, fade and balance.
<b>Occupancy mode</b>	Optimizes sound quality for the chosen seating position.
<b>RBDS/RDS</b>	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category.
<b>DSP</b>	Allows you to choose between STEREO SURROUND mode and STEREO mode.
<b>CD</b>	
<b>Scan all</b>	Select to scan all disc selections.
<b>Scan folder</b>	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
<b>CD compression</b>	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.
<b>DISPLAY</b>	
<b>Dimming</b>	Select to change display brightness.
<b>Language</b>	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
<b>Temp setting</b>	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius
<b>CLOCK</b>	
<b>Set time</b>	Select to set the time.
<b>Set date</b>	Select to set the calendar date.
<b>12/24 hour</b>	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

**AUXILIARY INPUT JACK**

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

 **WARNING:** For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while the vehicle is moving.

 **WARNING:** Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.



The auxiliary input jack (AIJ) allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through the vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male one-eighth inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

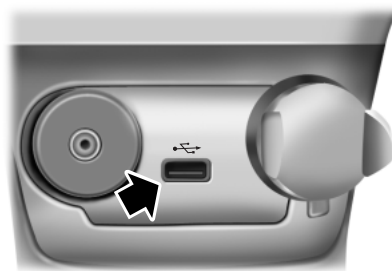
1. Make sure the vehicle, radio and portable music player are turned off and the vehicle is in P (Park).
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the AIJ.
3. Turn on the radio. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn on your portable music player and adjust its volume to one-half maximum.

6. Press AUX until LINE or LINE IN appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

### USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.



The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). Refer to the *SYNC*® chapter for more information.

### SATELLITE RADIO INFORMATION (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Satellite Radio Channels

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.sirius.ca](http://www.sirius.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite Radio Reception Factors**

<b>Potential satellite radio reception issues</b>	
<b>Antenna obstructions</b>	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
<b>Terrain</b>	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
<b>Station overload</b>	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
<b>Satellite radio signal interference</b>	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

**SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service**

**Note:** SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system includes

hardware and a limited subscription term which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle. Refer to your authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.sirius.ca](http://www.sirius.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)**

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, you can view this number by pressing SIRIUS and memory preset 1 at the same time.

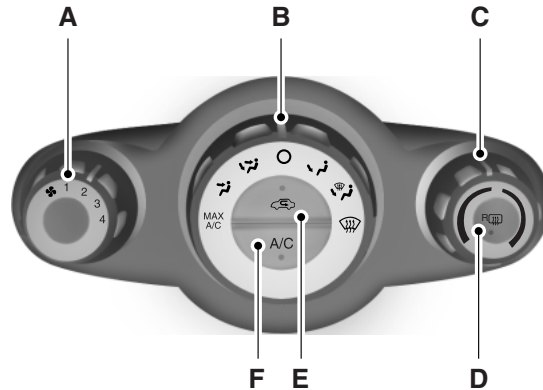
**Troubleshooting**

<b>SIRIUS® troubleshooting tips</b>		
<b>Radio Display</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Possible Action</b>
Acquiring	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS® system failure	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	Channel no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	The signal is currently being blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.

<b>SIRIUS® troubleshooting tips</b>		
<b>Radio Display</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Possible Action</b>
Call SIRIUS® 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® Satellite Radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to reactivate or resolve subscription issues.
No Channels Available	All the channels in the selected category are skipped or locked.	Using the channel guide, unlock or unskip the channels.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS® has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.



## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



**A. Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.

**B. Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.

**MAX A/C:** Select to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel and footwell air vents.

**O:** Select to turn the system off.



Select to distribute air through the footwell vents.



Select to distribute air through the windshield and footwell air vents.



Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. You can also increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing.

**C. Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select MAX A/C, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

**D. Rear defroster:** Press to switch the rear defroster on. Refer to *Heated windows and mirrors* later in this chapter for more information.

**E. Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**F. Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing if required.

**Heating the Interior Quickly**

1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.

**Recommended Settings for Heating**

1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.

**Cooling the Interior Quickly**

1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

**Recommended Settings for Cooling**

1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

**Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures**

1	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.

**Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather**

1	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and footwell air vents positions.
2	Press the A/C button.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.
5	Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
6	Close the instrument panel vents.

**Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions**

1	Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2	Press the A/C and recirculated air buttons.
3	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

**HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)****Heated Rear Window**

**Note:** The ignition must be switched on to use this feature.

**Note:** The heated rear window switches on automatically when the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C).

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button again to switch it off. It switches off automatically after a predetermined time, or when you switch the ignition off.

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

**Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)**

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Both mirrors are heated to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defroster is activated.

**CABIN AIR FILTER**

**Note:** A screen or filter must be installed at all times to prevent foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a screen or filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Your vehicle is equipped with either a screen or filter; it is located behind the instrument panel.

The particulate air filtration system is designed to reduce the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air being supplied to the interior of the vehicle. The particulate filtration system gives the following benefits to customers:

- Improves the customer's driving comfort by reducing particle concentration
- Improves the interior compartment cleanliness
- Protects the climate control components from particle deposits

Vehicles without a cabin air filter have a screen which can be washed clean at periodic intervals.

Vehicles with a cabin air filter should have the filter replaced at regular intervals. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter.

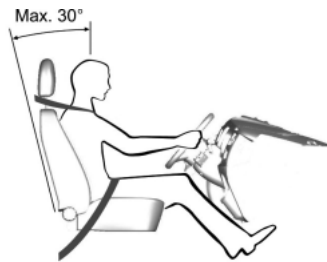
For additional information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

**SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION**

**!** **WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

**!** **WARNING:** Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injury in the event of a collision.

**!** **WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or during heavy braking or when stopping suddenly.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees from vertical.
- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible, remaining comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (250 mm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

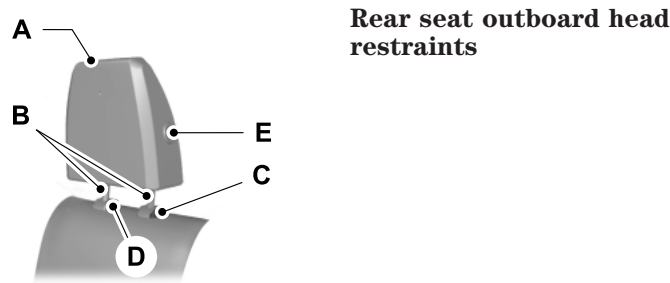
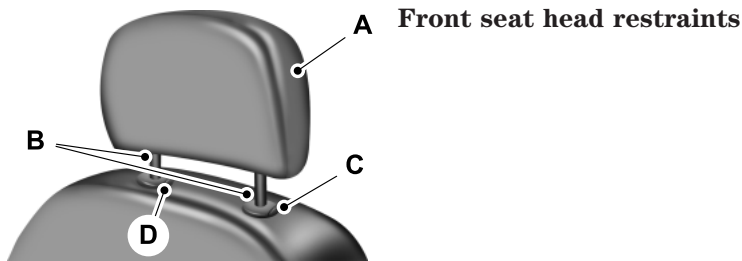
Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

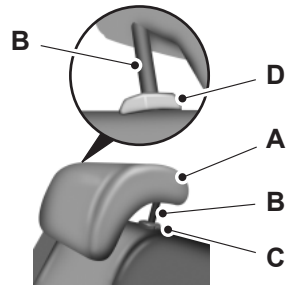
**HEAD RESTRAINTS**

**!** **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

**!** **WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible, it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

**!** **WARNING:** Install the head restraint properly to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.



**Rear seat center head restraints**

The head restraints consist of:

- A. An energy absorbing head restraint
- B. Two steel stems
- C. Guide sleeve adjust and release button
- D. Guide sleeve unlock and remove button
- E. Fold button

**Note:** Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting any head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible, remaining comfortable. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

### **Adjusting the Head Restraint**

#### **Raising the head restraint**

Pull up the head restraint.

#### **Lowering the head restraint**

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

#### **Removing the head restraint**

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.



**Installing the head restraint**

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

**Folding the rear head restraint (if equipped)**

1. To fold, press and hold button E.
2. To unfold, rotate the head restraint rearward.

**Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)**

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Tilt the head restraint forward by gently pulling the top of the head restraint.

Once it is in its forward-most position, tilting it forward once more will release it to the upright position.

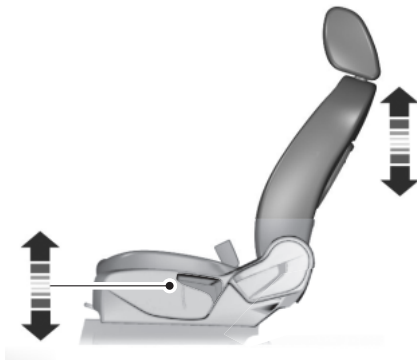
**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

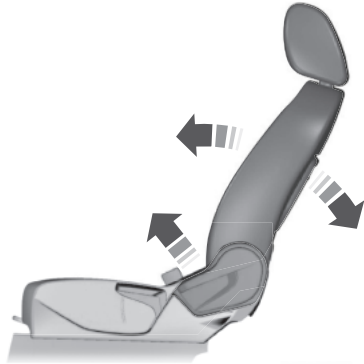
**FRONT SEATS**

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

**Moving the Seats Backward and Forward****Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat**

**Recline Adjustment**

**!** **WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

**HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)**

**!** **WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Your heated seats include both a heated seat cushion and heated seatback.

To operate the heated seats:



- Press the button located on the instrument panel to activate.
- Press again to deactivate.

The heated seats will activate when the ignition is in the on position and the engine is running.

## REAR SEATS

### Folding Down the Rear Seat

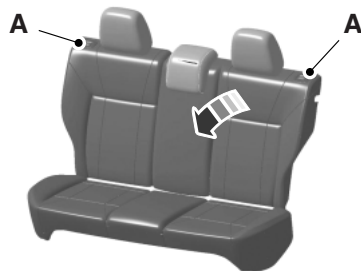


**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. Make sure that the safety belt is not laying on the seat latch. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

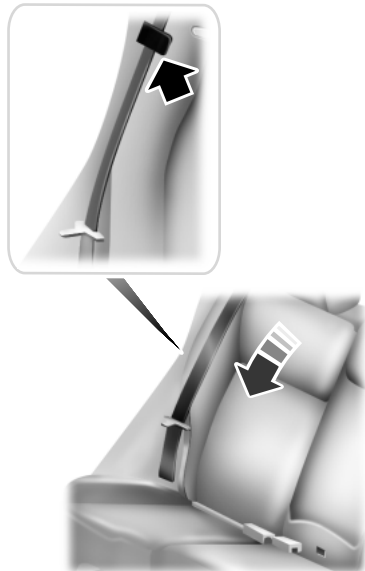
**Note:** Before lowering the seatbacks, lower or remove the outboard head restraints to the lowest position.

One or both rear seatbacks can be folded down to provide additional cargo space.

To lower the seatback(s) from inside the vehicle:



1. Press the unlock buttons (A) down and hold them there.
2. Push the seatback forward.



3. Stow the safety belt in the belt stowage clip. This will prevent the safety belt from getting caught in the seat latch.

When raising the seatback(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place.

**AUXILIARY POWER POINTS**

**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volts DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigarette lighter element.

**Note:** Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

**Locations**

Power points may be found:

- on the instrument panel
- on the rear of the center console
- inside the center console storage bin.

---

### CENTER CONSOLE



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.


Your vehicle has a variety of console features. These include:


- Front cupholders
- Removable rear cupholder insert
- Coin holders


## 128 Starting and Stopping the Engine


---

### GENERAL INFORMATION

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 **WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you connect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You may disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

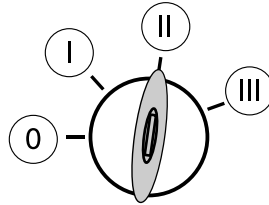
This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting your vehicle, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.



**IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)**

**Note:** When you switch the engine off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could discharge your vehicle battery.



**0 (Off):** The ignition is off.

**I (Accessory):** Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

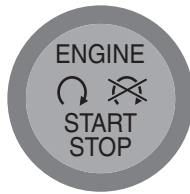
**II (On):** All electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. This is the key position when driving.

**III (Start):** Cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

**KEYLESS STARTING (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside the vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.



To switch the ignition on, press the start button. It is located on the right side of the steering column. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational, and warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

To start the vehicle with an automatic transmission:

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Press the start button.

## 130 Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

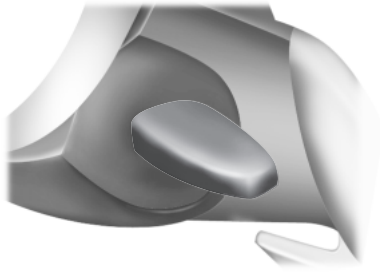
To start the vehicle with a manual transmission:

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Press the start button.

The system does not function if:

- the key frequencies are jammed.
- the key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle:



1. Locate the key backup slot on the steering column.
2. Hold the key next to the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, you can use the start button to switch the ignition on and start the vehicle.

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Press the start button.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators are switched off.

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be off.

1. Press and hold the start button for at least one second or press the start button three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector to position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position **P** and switch the ignition off.

### Fast Restart

If a valid key is not present, the fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off. Press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) if the car is stationary. If the car is still moving, press the start button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle without the key present inside the vehicle.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the start button, even if a valid key has not been detected. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You are not able to start your vehicle if a valid key is not detected within 20 seconds.

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start your engine, the idle speed increases to warm the engine up. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
- Turn the key to position II.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine. The engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** If you cannot start your engine on the first try, wait for a short period of time and try again.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13°F (-25°C), press the accelerator pedal slightly and try again.

If you cannot start your engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds, then follow this procedure:

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully press the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

## 132 Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

### Guarding against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have this checked immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

### Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least one inch (2.5 centimeters).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory or Canadian Standards Association. This extension cord must be able to be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked *Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances*. Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.

- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and the heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure the vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

**Using the Engine Block Heater**

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth, if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

**SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel® “no cap” fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.



**WARNING:** Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

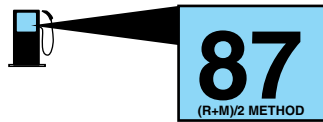
### FUEL QUALITY

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

### Choosing the Right Fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel fuel, fuel-methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel because it could damage or impair the emission control system. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

### Octane Recommendations



“Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87,

particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

**RUNNING OUT OF FUEL**

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, refer to *Warning lamps and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Refilling with a Portable Fuel Container**

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

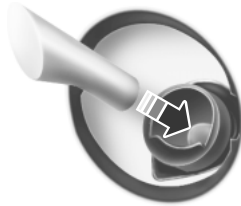


**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

When filling the vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle.





1. Locate the white plastic funnel in the spare tire compartment.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

### REFUELING



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
- Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

**Easy Fuel® “No Cap” Fuel System**

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the fuel filler door.
3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system, and leave the nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.
4. After you are done pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle—allow about ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

**Note:** A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a Check Fuel Fill Inlet message may appear on the instrument cluster. At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and/or allow the inlet to close properly.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city/highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

**FUEL CONSUMPTION****Filling the tank**

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low–medium–high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click–offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

**Calculating fuel economy**

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,200 km–4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy as follows:

Standard: Divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

**EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM**

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not

permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See *Easy Fuel*® “no cap” fuel system in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

**Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing**

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in this chapter.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.


If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.


The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)**

 **WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**Note:** The automatic transmission performs a series of automated checks when the ignition is turned to the off position. A slight clicking sound may be heard and is considered a normal part of operation.

**P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Press the brake pedal.
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop.
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park).

**R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

**N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.


**D (Drive)**

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.

**D (Drive) with Overdrive Cancel/Grade Assist**

Pressing the transmission control switch on the side of the gearshift lever activates overdrive cancel and grade assist.

Overdrive cancel/grade assist

- Overdrive is deactivated.
- The transmission operates in gears one through five.
- 
  - The grade assist lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

- Improves driving in hilly terrain or mountainous areas by providing additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation on uphill climbs.
- Provides additional engine braking through the automatic transmission shift strategy which reacts to vehicle inputs (vehicle acceleration, accelerator pedal, brake pedal and vehicle speed).
- Allows the transmission to select gears that will provide the desired engine braking based on the vehicle inputs mentioned above. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.

Overdrive cancel with grade assist is designed to provide optimal gear selection in hilly terrain or mountainous areas. It is recommended that you return to D (Drive) on flat terrain to provide the best fuel economy and transmission function.

To return to D (Drive), press the transmission control switch again.

- The grade assist lamp in the instrument cluster will not be illuminated.
- The transmission will operate in gears one through five.



**L (Low)**

This position:

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Will downshift to the lowest available gear for the current vehicle speed; allows for first gear when vehicle reaches slower speeds.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

**S (Sport) (if equipped)**

Moving the gearshift lever to S (Sport):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy which reacts to vehicle inputs (vehicle acceleration, accelerator pedal, brake pedal and vehicle speed).
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

**Note:** The system will stay in S (Sport) until the gear shift lever is moved into another gear for example P (park) or D (Drive).

**Understanding Your SelectShift Automatic® Transmission (If Equipped)**

**Note:** Your transmission must be in S (Sport) for SelectShift to operate properly.

Your SelectShift automatic transmission gives you the ability to manually change gears if you'd like. To use SelectShift, move the gearshift lever into S (Sport). Now you can use the thumb toggle on the side of your gearshift lever to select gears.



When using the toggle for manual shifting:

- Press (+) on the toggle to upshift.
- Press (-) on the toggle to downshift.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart.

<b>Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)</b>	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster will show the current selected gear you are in.

SelectShift will automatically make some downshifts for you if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift will make some downshifts for you, it will still allow you to downshift at any time as long as SelectShift determines that the engine will not be damaged from over-revving.

**Note:** If manual control is no longer desired, return the gear shift lever from S (Sport) to D (Drive).

**Note:** Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.

### Brake-Shift Interlock



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

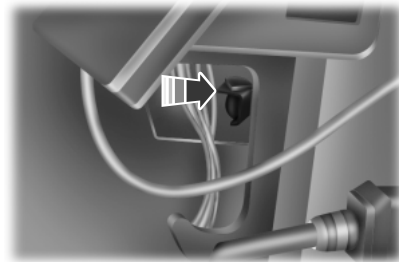
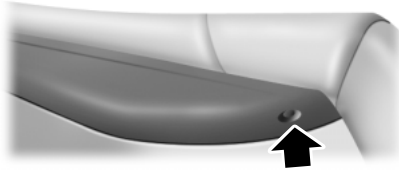


**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the on position unless the brake pedal is pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to the *Fuses* chapter for more information.

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):



1. Apply the parking brake, turn the ignition key to the off position and remove the key.

2. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), carefully pry off and remove the passenger side console cover to expose the inside of the shifter assembly.

3. Locate the brake shift interlock lever on the passenger side of the shifter assembly.

4. Apply the brake pedal. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), press and hold the brake shift interlock lever forward below the metal blade while pulling the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position and into the N (Neutral) position.

5. Install the console cover.

6. Apply the brake pedal, start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

**Note:** See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

#### If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

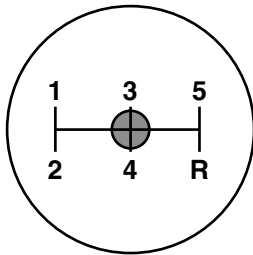
If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**MANUAL TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)****Using the Clutch**

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.



During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.

**Note:** Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch.

**Recommended Shift Speeds**

The engine is designed to operate at a minimum of 1250 RPM for optimal power, fuel economy, and durability. When driving a vehicle equipped with a manual transmission, do not operate the engine below 1250 RPM while driving with the transmission in any gear (also known as "lugging"). This does not apply while starting or idling the engine while the transmission is in neutral and/or the clutch pedal is pressed. Lugging the engine below 1250 RPM may result in damage to the vehicle powertrain, poor fuel economy, poor acceleration, and undesirable noise, vibration, and harshness. Choose the next lowest gear until a proper engine RPM is reached.

**Note:** Do not downshift into 1 (First) when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.

Upshift according to the following chart:

<b>Recommended upshifts (for best fuel economy) when accelerating</b>	
<b>5-speed manual transmission</b>	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	14 mph (23 km/h)
2 - 3	24 mph (39 km/h)
3 - 4	32 mph (51 km/h)
4 - 5	44 mph (71 km/h)

### Reverse

**Note:** Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.

**Note:** The gearshift lever can only be moved into R (Reverse) by moving it from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) before shifting into R (Reverse). This is a lockout feature that protects the transmission from accidentally being shifted into R (Reverse) from 5 (Fifth).

Hold the clutch pedal down and move the gearshift lever into the neutral position. Shift into R (Reverse).

If R (Reverse) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then press it down and shift to R (Reverse) again.

### Parking Your Vehicle



**WARNING:** Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

To park your vehicle:

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, hold the clutch pedal down, then shift into 1 (First).
3. Turn the ignition off.

**HILL START ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** The hill start assist feature does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into P (Park) for automatic transmission or 1st gear for manual transmissions.



**WARNING:** You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the hill start assist feature.



**WARNING:** During all times, you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the hill start assist system and intervening, if required.



**WARNING:** If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected when the hill start assist feature is active, the hill start assist feature will be deactivated.

This feature makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake. When this feature is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

This feature is activated automatically on any slope that can result in significant vehicle rollback. This feature will not operate if the parking brake is activated.

### Using Hill Start Assist

**Note:** If the engine is revved excessively, hill start assist will be deactivated.

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope, the hill start assist feature will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. Refer to the *Vehicle Care* chapter for wheel cleaning instructions.



Refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

**Brake Over Accelerator**

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)**

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



The ABS lamp momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



If the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.



**HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES**

When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the dangers inherent when:

- you drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- you take corners too fast.
- the road surface is poor.

**PARKING BRAKE**

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the transmission selector lever is securely latched in position **P** (automatic transmission) or **1** (manual transmission).



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

To set the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

**Note:** If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or position **P** and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or position **P** and turn the steering wheel towards the curb.

The BRAKE warning lamp will illuminate and will remain illuminated until the parking brake is released.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

**PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION**

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

**USING TRACTION CONTROL**

In certain situations (e.g. stuck in snow or mud), turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Turn off the traction control system through the information display. Refer to the *Information Displays* chapter.

**System Indicator Lights and Messages**

**WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the Traction Control System, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the Traction Control System was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with Traction Control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when the traction control system is turned off.

When the traction control system is turned off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

**PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION**

**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

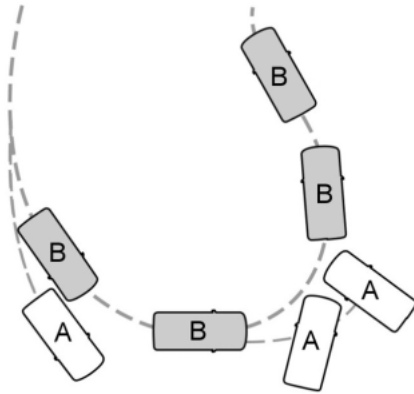


**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The AdvanceTrac® system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control (ESC) portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides and the traction control system (TCS) helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. (For details on TCS operation, see the *Traction Control* chapter.)

**A** Vehicle without AdvanceTrac® skidding off its intended route.

**B** Vehicle with AdvanceTrac® maintaining control on a slippery surface.



#### USING ADVANCETRAC®

The system automatically activates when you start your engine. The AdvanceTrac® system cannot be completely turned off, but the ESC portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in R (Reverse). The traction control portion of the system can be turned off independently. See the *Traction Control* chapter.

**PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION**

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

**USING CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

**Note:** Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up or down a steep hill. Apply the brakes if the vehicle speed increases above the set speed while driving downhill.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.



The speed controls are located on the steering wheel.

**Switching On Cruise Control**

Press and release ON.

**Setting a Speed**

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press and release SET+.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



The indicator will turn on in the instrument cluster.

**Changing the Set Speed**

- Press and hold SET+ or SET- to increase or decrease the set speed. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press release SET+ or SET-. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator pedal or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed then press and release SET+.

**Canceling a Set Speed**

Press CAN, tap the brake pedal or press the clutch pedal. The set speed will not be erased.

**Note:** When you use the clutch pedal to cancel a set speed, the engine speed may briefly increase.

**Resuming a Set Speed**

Press and release RES.

**Switching Off Cruise Control**

**Note:** The set speed is erased when you switch off cruise control.

Press OFF or switch off the ignition.

**STEERING****Electric Power Steering**

**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected a steering message will appear in the information display.



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, a message will be displayed in the information display. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the information display for a steering message. If a steering message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.



**WARNING:** Obtain immediate service if a system error is detected. You may not notice any difference in the feel of your steering, but a serious condition may exist. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

When a steering system error is detected, steering messages may appear in the information display.

***Steering Tips***

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.



**LOAD LIMIT****Vehicle loading**


This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**Example only:**

**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

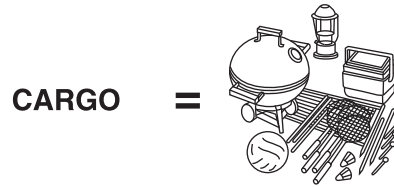
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIERE 3
--------------------------------------	---------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lb.

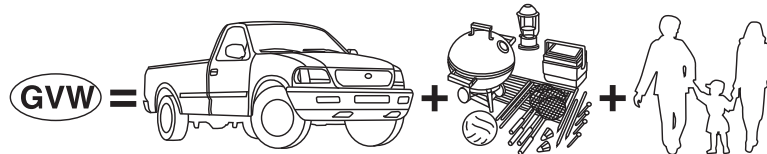
TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	



**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

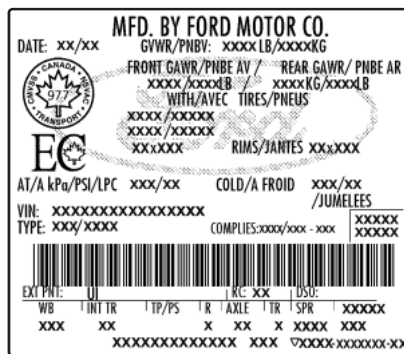
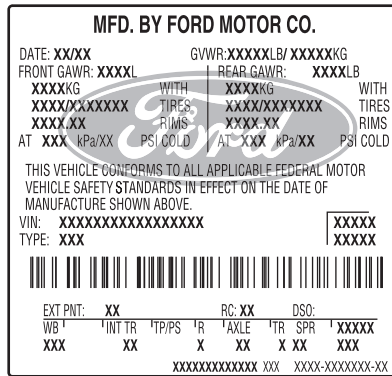
**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**



**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

- Example only:



**!** **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

**!** **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

**Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ( $1400 - 750$  ( $5 \times 150$ ) = 650 lb.). In metric units ( $635 - 340$  ( $5 \times 68$ ) = 295 kg.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:


- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kg.

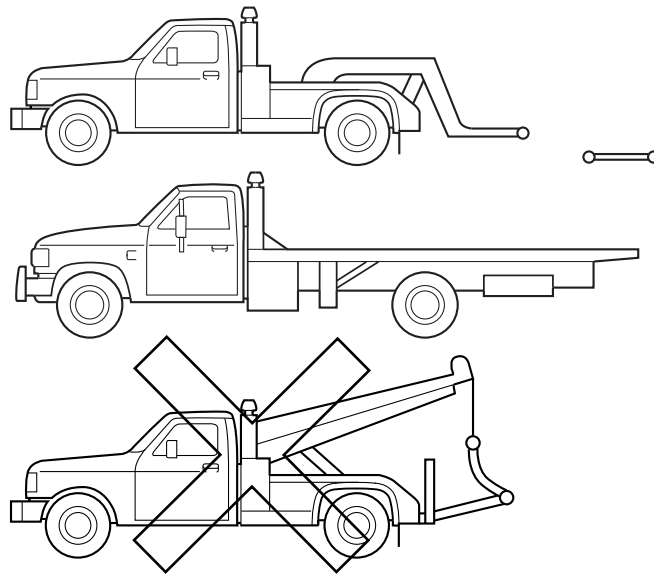
- A final example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

**TOWING A TRAILER**

 **WARNING:** Never tow a trailer with this vehicle. Your vehicle is not equipped to tow. No towing packages are available through an authorized dealer.

**WRECKER TOWING**

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. If the vehicle is towed incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

If your vehicle is towed from the rear with wheel lift equipment, the front wheels must be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.

If your vehicle is towed from the front with wheel lift equipment, it is recommended that the rear wheels be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the rear fascia.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

In the event your vehicle becomes disabled (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain/transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission is placed in N (Neutral). Refer to *Automatic transmission* in the *Transmission* chapter if you cannot move the transmission into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 kilometers).

### Recreational Towing

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for more information.

**Note:** The vehicle must be towed in the forward position to ensure no damage is done to the internal transmission components. In addition, it is recommended that you follow the instructions provided by the aftermarket manufacturer of the towing equipment, if provided.

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motor home. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

Before you tow your vehicle, follow these directions for your specific vehicle configuration **after** it is hooked-up to the RV or tow dolly:

#### ***Vehicles with a Manual Transmission***

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Move the gearshift to the neutral position.
  - The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (113 km/h).
  - There is no limitation on towing distance.



---

**Vehicles with an Automatic Transmission but No Push Button Start System**

**Note:** There **must** be battery power to properly move the transmission's internal components to N (Neutral) in Step 3. Also, moving the gearshift to the N (Neutral) position without first turning the ignition to the on (II) position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 miles (80 kilometers).

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition to the on (II) position.
3. Press the brake pedal, then move the gearshift to the N (Neutral) position.
4. Wait for TRANSMISSION READY to appear in the multi-function display, then turn the ignition to the off (0) position and release the brake pedal.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. (The anti-theft system is disabled until the battery cable is reconnected.) Refer to *Battery* in the *Maintenance* chapter when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery cable.
  - The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (113 km/h).
  - There is no limitation on towing distance.

When done towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. When reconnecting that cable, tighten it until it's snug against the terminal; be careful not to overtighten.

**Vehicles with an Automatic Transmission and Push Button Start System**

**Note:** There **must** be battery power to properly move the transmission's internal components to N (Neutral) in Step 3. Also, moving the gearshift to the N (Neutral) position without first turning the ignition to the on (II) position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 miles (80 kilometers).

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Activate the ignition by pressing the START/STOP button, but **not** applying the brake pedal.
3. Press the brake pedal, then move the gearshift to the N (Neutral) position. Release the brake pedal.
4. Wait for TRANSMISSION READY to appear in the multi-function display, then deactivate the ignition by pressing the START/STOP button.

5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. (The door key [inside the Intelligent Access Key] is needed to lock/unlock doors when the battery cable is disconnected. Also, the anti-theft system is disabled until the battery cable is reconnected.) Refer to *Battery* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery cable.
  - The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (113 km/h).
  - There is no limitation on towing distance.

When done towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. When reconnecting that cable, tighten it until it's snug against the terminal; be careful not to overtighten.

**BREAKING-IN**

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unique driving characteristics. Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine. Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

**ECONOMICAL DRIVING**

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

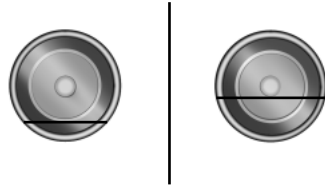
There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may not want to do because they may reduce your fuel economy:

- Sudden or hard accelerations.
- Rev the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.
- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).

- Add particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Drive with the wheels out of alignment.

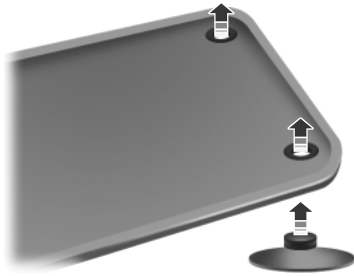
**DRIVING THROUGH WATER**

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).

When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall.

**Note:** Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.

**Note:** Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

**FLOOR MATS**

**WARNING:** Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

- Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
- Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

**WARNING** *(Continued)*

- Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.
- To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.
- To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE****Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Getting roadside assistance**

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner manual portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- battery jump start.
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

**Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Using roadside assistance**

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

**Vehicles sold in Canada : Getting roadside assistance**

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

**Vehicles sold in Canada : Using roadside assistance**

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your Warranty Guide or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

**HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS**

The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

**Note:** With extended use, the flashers may run down your 12 volt battery.

**FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCH**

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury.

Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.



Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to re-enable fuel pump.

**Note:** If your vehicle has the push button start system, press the stop/start button twice to reactivate the fuel system.

### JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm soft shifts, firm shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system

1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

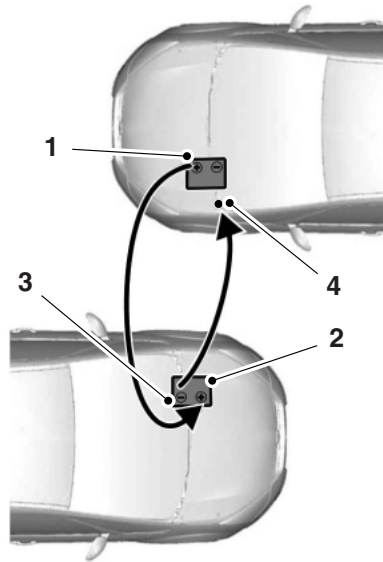
### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.

3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

### Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.

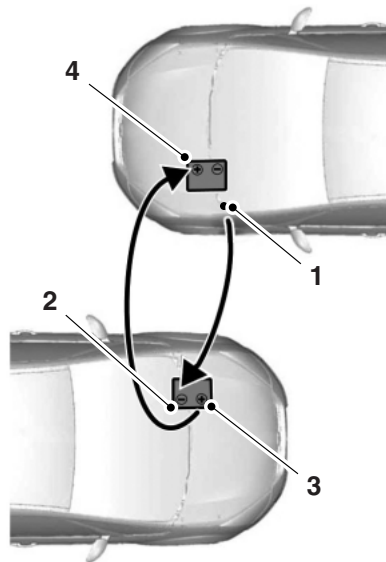
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

**Removing the Jumper Cables**

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

**GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED**

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training, equipment or both, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

**Away from home**

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

**Mailing address**

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

**Telephone**

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

**Online**

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.fordowner.com](http://www.fordowner.com)

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans

- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

**Mailing address**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

**Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

**Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

**IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)**

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

**THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step

procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

**UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM  
(CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

**GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA**

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.



If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.

Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957  
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 21470  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: +971 4 3326084  
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409  
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575  
FAX: +971 4 3327299  
Email: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

#### **ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE**

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
47911 Halyard Drive  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

#### **Obtaining a French Owner's Manual**

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

#### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)**



If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety

Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

---

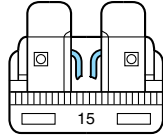
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

**REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at: <https://wwwapps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx>.

**CHANGING A FUSE****Fuses**

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

**Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color**

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

**FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART**

**Power Distribution Box**



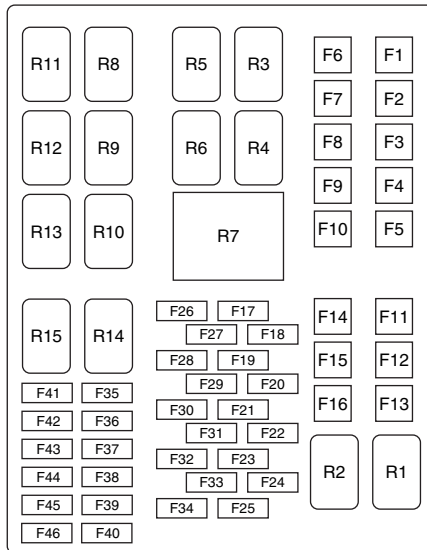
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to *Changing the vehicle battery* in the *Maintenance* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F1	40A*	Anti-lock brake system pump
F2	50A*	Transmission control module
F3	40A*	Engine cooling fan relay and motor
F4	40A*	Heater blower relay and motor
F5	60A*	Passenger compartment fuse panel
F6	30A*	Body control module – door locks
F7	60A*	Passenger compartment fuse panel (ignition relay)
F8	40A*	Powertrain control module, Power distribution box
F9	20A*	Anti-lock brake system module valve
F10	30A*	Starter inhibit relay, Starter motor
F11	30A*	Electronic fuel pump relay, Fuel tank, Ignition coil
F12	—	Not used
F13	—	Not used
F14	—	Not used
F15	—	Not used
F16	—	Not used
F17	20A**	High beam relay
F18	—	Not used
F19	20A**	Low beam relay
F20	15A**	Heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor, Catalyst module sensor
F21	7.5A**	Low and High beams coil relay control

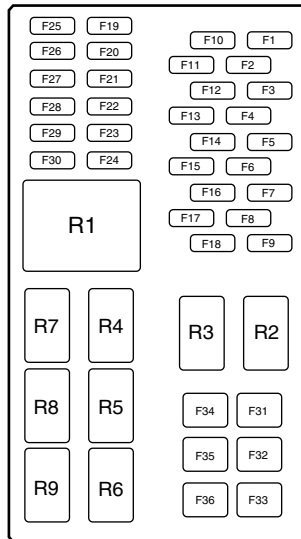
Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F22	15A**	Mass air flow sensor, Powertrain control module, Fuel injectors, Vehicle speed sensor, Variable camshaft timing, Canister purge
F23	15A**	Daytime running lights
F24	—	Not used
F25	15A**	Body control module – exterior lighting
F26	20A**	Body control module – battery saver, horn
F27	—	Not used
F28	15A**	Body control module – turn signals
F29	—	Not used
F30	10A**	A/C clutch solenoid and relay
F31	—	Not used
F32	7.5A**	Transmission control module, Powertrain control module
F33	15A**	Ignition coil
F34	30A**	Body control module – rear window defroster
F35	10A**	Left headlamp (low beam)
F36	10A**	Right headlamp (low beam)
F37	10A**	Left headlamp (high beam)
F38	10A**	Right headlamp (high beam)
F39	2A**	Natural vacuum leak detection
F40	—	Not used
F41	—	Not used
F42	—	Not used
F43	—	Not used
F44	—	Not used
F45	—	Not used

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F46	—	Not used
R1	—	Not used
R2	—	Not used
R3	—	Powertrain control module relay
R4	—	Heater blower relay
R5	—	Engine cooling fan relay
R6	—	Air condition clutch relay
R7	—	Not used
R8	—	Daytime running lamp
R9	—	Starter inhibit relay
R10	—	High beam relay
R11	—	Low beam relay
R12	—	Reverse lamp relay (automatic transmission only)
R13	—	Coil pack relay (Mexico only)
R14	—	Not used
R15	—	Not used
*Cartridge fuses **Mini fuses		



**Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel**

The fuse panel is located behind the glove box. Open the glove box, press the sides inward and swing the glove box down.



The fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F1	15A	Ignition switch, Keyless entry ignition and accessory relays
F2	10A	Electronic mirror, Air conditioning clutch, Engine compartment fuse panel
F3	7.5A	Instrument cluster
F4	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator, Occupant classification system
F5	15A	Diagnostic connector
F6	10A	Backup lamp

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F7	7.5A	Instrument panel display, Intelligent access antenna, Manual climate controls
F8	7.5A	Front dome lamp, Moonroof
F9	20A	Keyless vehicle module
F10	15A	Radio, SYNC® module, Global positioning system module
F11	20A	Body control module – front wipers
F12	20A	Tire pressure monitoring system
F13	15A	Body control module – rear wiper
F14	20A	Intelligent access module
F15	15A	Wiper switch
F16	7.5A	Power mirror switch, Driver window switch
F17	15A	Heated seats
F18	10A	Stop lamps, Turn signals
F19	7.5A	Instrument cluster
F20	10A	Airbag module
F21	10A	Body control module – ignition switch, Climate control, Passive anti-theft system transceiver, Electronic power steering module, Instrument cluster, Engine compartment fuse panel
F22	7.5A	Accelerator pedal position sensor, Powertrain control module, Gear shifter, Anti-lock brake system ignition feed
F23	10A	Transmission control unit ignition feed, Tire pressure monitoring system ignition feed

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F24	—	Not used
F25	7.5A	Exterior mirrors
F26	7.5A	Tire pressure monitoring system
F27	—	Not used
F28	—	Not used
F29	—	Not used
F30	—	Not used
F31	30A	Rear power window switches
F32	20A	Passenger compartment fuse panel battery saver relay
F33	20A	Power points
F34	30A	Front power window switches
F35	20A	Moonroof
F36	—	Not used
R1	—	Ignition relay
R2	—	Left rear stop/turn lamp relay (4-door only)
R3	—	Right rear stop/turn lamp relay (4-door only)
R4	—	Driver heated seat relay
R5	—	Passenger heated seat relay
R6	—	Intelligent access module – accessory relay
R7	—	Intelligent access module – ignition relay
R8	—	Battery saver relay, Rear powerpoints
R9	—	Not used

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

**Precautions**

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

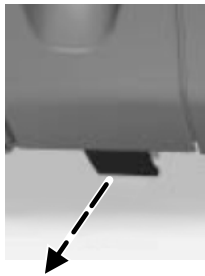
**Working with the engine off**

1. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, set the parking brake and shift to P (Park). For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, set the parking brake, press and hold the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in 1 (First), and release the clutch pedal.
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

**Working with the engine on**

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, set the parking brake and shift to P (Park). For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, set the parking brake, press and hold the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in N (Neutral), and release the clutch pedal.
2. Block the wheels.

**OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD**

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the instrument panel.

2. Raise the hood slightly. Then push the hood latch release lever, located under the front center of the hood, to the left.

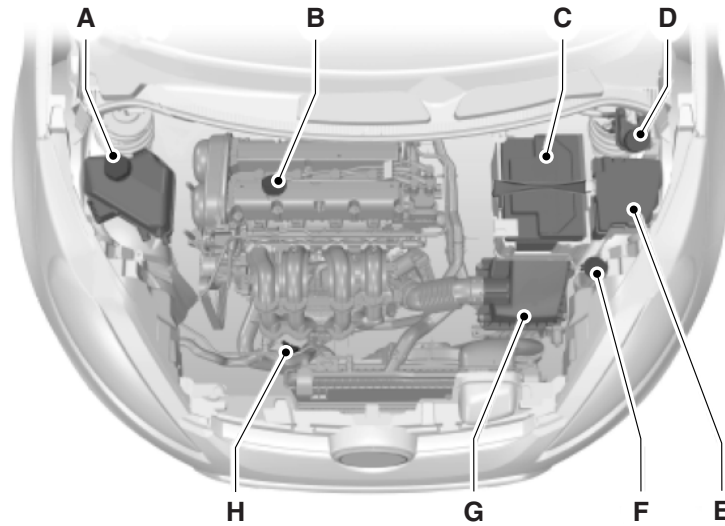


3. Lift the hood and support it with the prop rod.

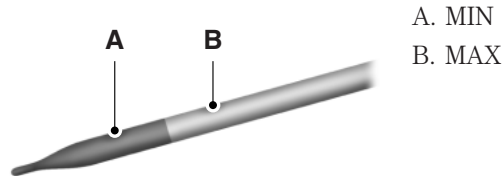


Lower the hood and allow it to drop for the last 8-11 inches (20-30 cm).

---

**UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW**

- A. Engine coolant reservoir
- B. Engine oil filler cap
- C. Battery
- D. Brake/Clutch fluid reservoir
- E. Power distribution box
- F. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- G. Air filter assembly
- H. Engine oil dipstick

**ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK****ENGINE OIL CHECK**

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add oil immediately.

**Adding engine oil**

**Note:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

**Note:** Do not add engine oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.



Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* for more information.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**ENGINE COOLANT CHECK****Checking the Engine Coolant**

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*.

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add coolant immediately.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

**Adding Engine Coolant**

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.



**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

**Note:** During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the engine coolant has degraded nor does it require the engine coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the engine coolant to be replaced.

- DO NOT MIX different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty.
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with prediluted engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See *Capacities and Specifications* for more information.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

### Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Always dispose of used automotive fluids in a responsible manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

**Severe Climates**

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

**TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK****Checking automatic transmission fluid**

**Note:** Transmission fluid should be checked and, if required, added by an authorized dealer.

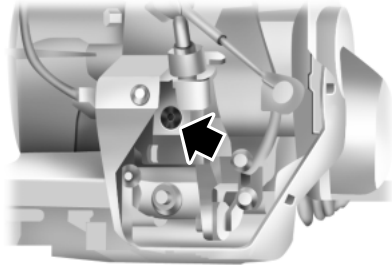
The automatic transmission does not have an underhood transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, (i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly) or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

**Checking manual transmission fluid (if equipped)**

The manual transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.



1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.
3. Fluid level should be at the bottom of the opening.
4. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is 5-10 mm below the bottom of the opening.

5. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.

Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Technical specifications* section in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

**BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK**

Brake and clutch (if equipped) systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

**POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK**

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

**FUEL FILTER**

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

**WASHER FLUID CHECK**

**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See the technical specifications chart in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

**Note:** The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

**CHANGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY**

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**Note:** If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time.

### Battery relearn

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission), turn off all accessories and start the engine.

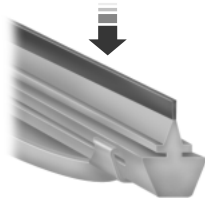
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
  4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **Note:** If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

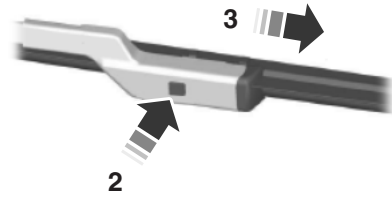
Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

### CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES**

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the windshield.
2. Press the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure the wiper blade locks into place.

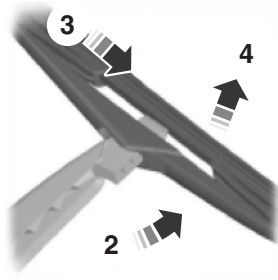
Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

**Changing Rear Window Wiper Blade**

To replace the rear wiper blade:



1. Lift and hold the wiper blade off the glass.

2. Position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Install the wiper blade in the reverse order.

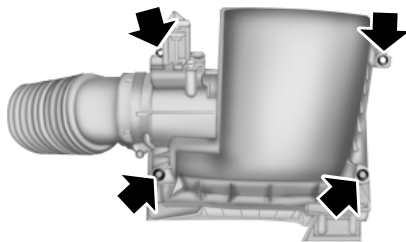
**AIR FILTER CHECK**

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

**Changing the air filter element**

1. Remove the four screws that secure the air filter housing cover.
  2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
  3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
  4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
  5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
  6. Replace the air filter housing cover and install the screws.
- Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

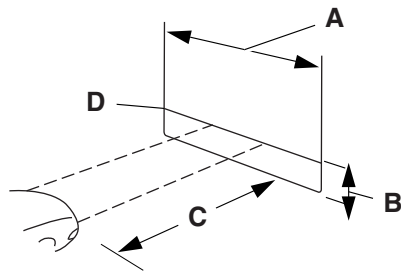


### ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

#### Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

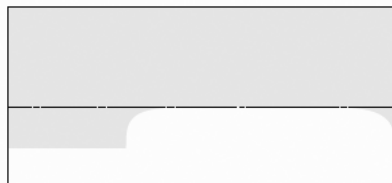


- (A) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (B) Center height of lamp to ground
- (C) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (D) Horizontal reference line

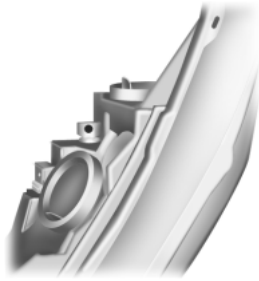
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well). The center of the lamp is marked by a 3 millimeter circle on the headlamp lens

3. Turn on the headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.



On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.



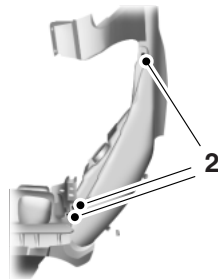
4. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 or 13 millimeter wrench/socket screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.

5. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NOT ADJUSTABLE.

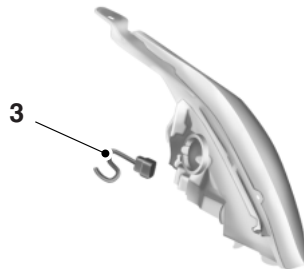
### REMOVING A HEADLAMP

**Note:** Remove the front lamp assembly in order to replace the bulbs.



1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position, then open the hood.

2. Remove the screws and pushpin holding the lamp assembly (driver side shown).



3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

4. Remove the lamp assembly.

**Note:** When lamp is removed, you will hear a clicking sound.

5. Reverse the procedure to install the lamp assembly.

**Note:** When installing the front lamp assembly, the front flange must be placed under the fascia. Ensure that the bottom tab gets placed properly into the white clip.

---

**CHANGING A BULB****Lamp Assembly Condensation**

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

**Replacing Bulbs**

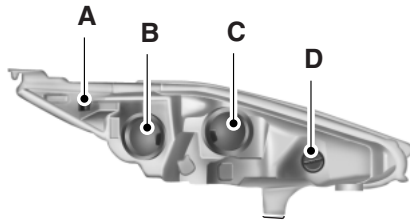
**Note:** Before changing bulb, verify the corresponding fuse is not blown.

The low beam headlamps, high beam headlamps, front turn signals and side marker lamps are located in the headlamp assembly and can be replaced individually by removing the headlamp assembly as a unit.

**Replacing Headlamp Bulbs**

**Note:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

**Note:** If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.



- A. Side marker lamp
- B. Low beam headlamp
- C. High beam headlamp
- D. Park and turn signal lamp

### **Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulb**

1. Remove the bulb cover.



2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

### **Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulb**

1. Remove the bulb cover.

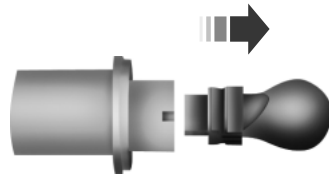


2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Open the spring and pull out the bulb.
5. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

**Replacing the Parking Lamp and Turn Signal Bulbs**

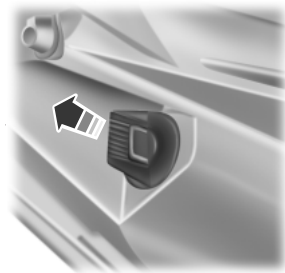
1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



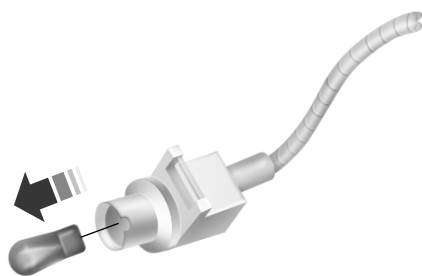
2. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder.

3. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

**Replacing the Side Marker Lamp Bulb**



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

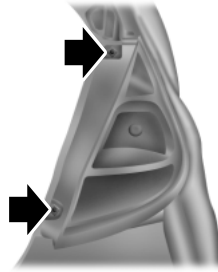


2. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder.

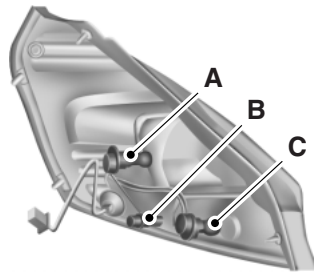
3. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

**Replacing the Signal Indicator Mirror Bulbs (If Equipped)**

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

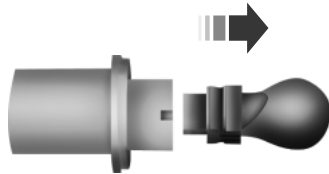
**Removing the Rear Lamps (5-Door)**

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove the screws holding the lamp assembly.

**Replacing the Stop, Reverse, and Turn Signal Lamps (5-Door)**

- A. Stop lamp
- B. Reverse lamp
- C. Turn signal

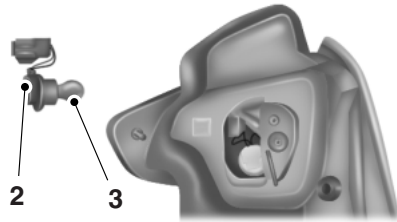
1. Turn any of the bulb holders counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the bulb from the holder.



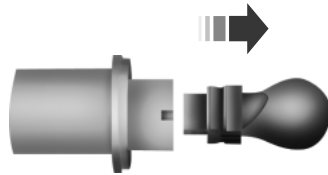
3. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

**Replacing the Body Side Rear Lamp (4-Door)**

1. Open the deck lid and remove the interior body side carpet.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



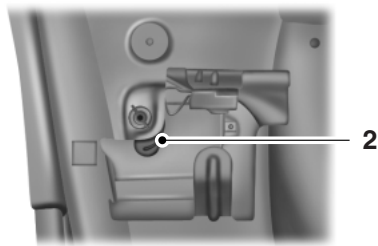
3. Remove the bulb from the holder.



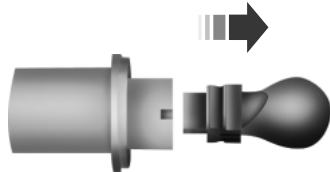
4. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

**Replacing the Deck Lid Mounted Rear Lamp (4-Door)**

1. Open the deck lid and remove the interior deck lid carpet.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



3. Remove the bulb from the holder.

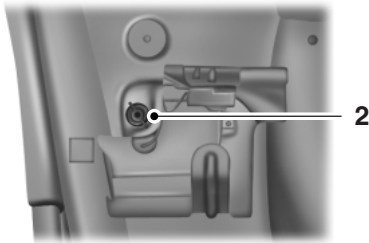


4. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.

#### ***Replacing the Deck Lid Mounted Reverse Lamp (4-Door)***

**Note:** Remove the rear lamp assembly in order to replace the reverse lamp bulb.

1. Open the deck lid and remove the interior deck lid carpet.

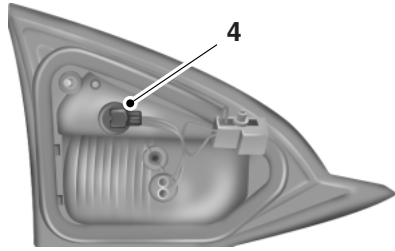


2. Loosen the central fixing screw.

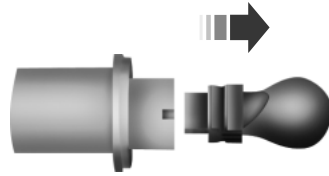


3. Carefully pull the outer upper corner of the lamp assembly to get it out of the deck lid.





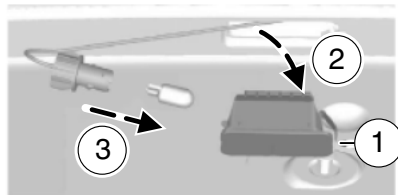
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



5. Remove the bulb from the holder.

- 6. Reverse the procedure to install the new bulb.
- 7. Reinstall the interior deck lid carpet.

**Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb**



- 1. Carefully release the spring clip.
- 2. Remove the lamp.
- 3. Remove the bulb.

**Replacing the High-Mounted Brake Lamp Bulb**

For replacement, see your authorized dealer.

**BULB SPECIFICATION CHART**

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

<b>Function</b>	<b>Number of bulbs</b>	<b>Trade number</b>
Headlamp (low beam)	1	H11B
Headlamp (high beam)	1	H11L
Headlamp (park/turn)	1	3157NAK (amber)
Headlamp (side marker)	1	168
4-door rear body side lamp (tail/turn/side marker)	1	3157K
4-door rear deck lid lamp (backup)	1	921
4-door rear deck lid lamp (tail)	1	W5W
5-door rear lamp (stop/reverse)	2	3157K
5-door rear lamp (turn)	1	3157A (amber)
License plate lamp	1	W5W
* 5-door high-mounted brake lamp	1	LED
* 4-door high-mounted brake lamp	5	W5W
Interior lamp	1	W6W
Reading lamp	1	W5W
Luggage compartment lamp	1	W5W
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer.		
All replacement bulbs are clear in color, except where noted.		
* To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.		

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

**CLEANING PRODUCTS**

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
- Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]
- Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)
- Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)
- Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

**CLEANING THE EXTERIOR**

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.

- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle's paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Note:** Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.

**Exterior Chrome**

**Note:** Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers.

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.
- **Note:** Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

**Underbody**

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

**Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts**

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

**WAXING**

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

**REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE**

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

**CLEANING THE ENGINE**

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

**CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES**

The windows and wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid in Canada. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

**Note:** Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.

**CLEANING THE INTERIOR**

**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

#### **CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS**



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

#### **CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)**

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner . Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

#### **CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS**

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers.

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.



- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

### VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

#### *General*

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

#### *Body*

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

*Engine*

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminants that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

*Fuel system*

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

**Note:** During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

*Cooling system*

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

*Battery*

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

**Note:** If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

*Brakes*

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

*Tires*

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

*Miscellaneous*

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 meters) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

**Removing Vehicle from Storage**

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage (mice/squirrel nests).
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive the vehicle 15 feet (4.5 meters) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If the battery was removed, clean the battery cable ends and inspect.

Contact your authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

**TIRE CARE****Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

**Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

**Traction AA A B C**

**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Temperature A B C**

**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

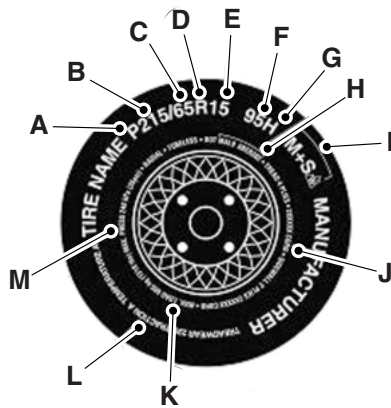
**Glossary of Tire Terminology**

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

**INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL**

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

**Information on “P” Type Tires**

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.



**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver’s seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

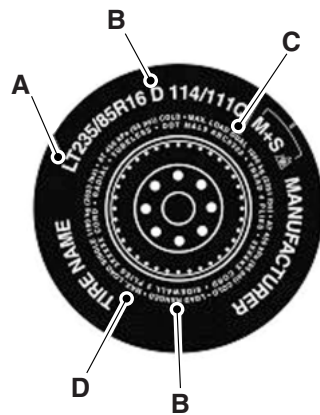
**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

**M. Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

**Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for "LT" Type Tires**



"LT" type tires have some additional information beyond those of "P" type tires; these differences are described below.

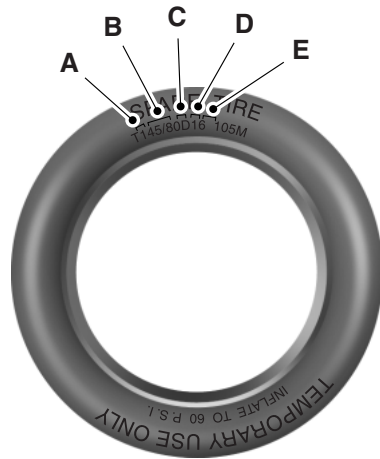
**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

**Information on “T” Type Tires**

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**Location of the Tire Label**

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Load Carrying* chapter.

**INFLATING YOUR TIRES**

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or “blowout”, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure

which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

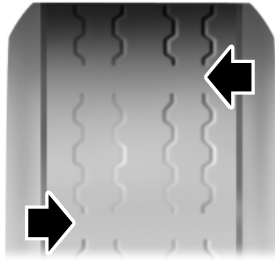
6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire Wear



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

**Damage**

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

**WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently. You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

**U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**Tire Replacement Requirements**

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

### Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

### Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

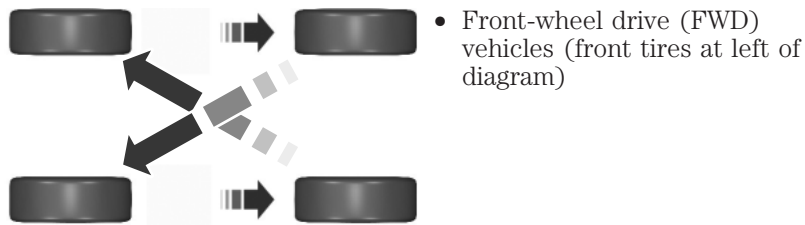
### Tire Rotation

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire and wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**USING SNOW CHAINS**

**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

**Note:** The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. Use chains on the tires only in an emergency or if the law requires them.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use SAE Class S chains with 195/65R15 or 215/55R16 tires only; do not use tire chains with any other size tires.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM**

**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

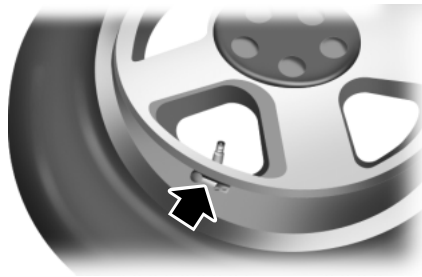
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction

telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Changing Tires with a TPMS



**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire and wheel assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

### Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### When Your Temporary Spare Tire Is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with a TPMS* in this section.

**When You Believe Your System Is Not Operating Properly**

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### ***When Inflating Your Tires***

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### ***How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure***

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

**CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL**

**WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.



**WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in this chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* earlier in the chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

**Dissimilar Spare Tire and Wheel Assembly Information**

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire and wheel assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall



2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: "THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire and wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire and wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise

- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel, and seek service as soon as possible.

#### Tire Change Procedure



**WARNING:** When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission selector lever is in position **P** or **N**.




**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission selector lever in position **P** or **N**, set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



**WARNING:** Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

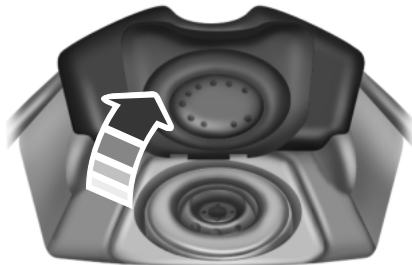


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

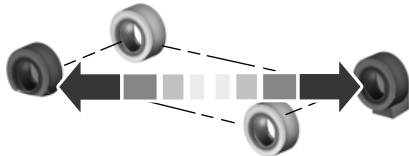
 **WARNING:** Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission selector lever in position **P** or **R** and turn the engine off.

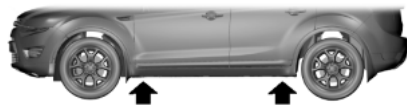


3. Remove the spare tire and jack by turning their tie-down bolts counterclockwise. The lug wrench is located in a bag next to, or on top of, the spare tire.



4. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.

5. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



6. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the yellow warning label on the jack. **Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.**

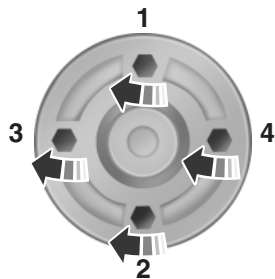


7. Position the jack in the indentions on the sill next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is off the ground.

8. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

9. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

10. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



11. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

12. Put the flat tire, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive. Unblock the wheels.

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications**

**!** **WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
M12 x 1.5	100	135

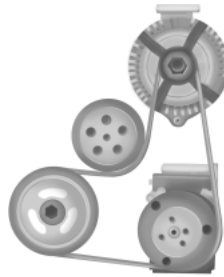
\* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.



**Note:** Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

**ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS**

<b>Engine</b>	<b>1.6L engine</b>
Cubic inches	97
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Distributorless Ignition System (D.I.S.)
Compression ratio	11:1
Spark plug gap	0.028 - 0.031 inch (0.70 - 0.80 mm)

**Drivebelt Routing**

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Brake/Clutch fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, trunk latch, seat tracks.	—	Multi-Purpose Grease (Lithium grease)	XG-4 or XL-5 or equivalent / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinder	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Manual transmission fluid	2.2 quarts (2.1L)	Motorcraft® Full Synthetic Manual Transmission Fluid	XT-M5-QS / WSD-M2C200-C
Automatic transmission fluid <sup>1</sup>	1.8 quarts (1.7L)	Motorcraft® Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid	XT-11-QDC / WSS-M2C200-D2

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Engine oil <sup>2,3</sup>	4.2 quarts (4.0L) (with filter change)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-5W20-QSP (US)</li> <li>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C945 -A</li> </ul>
Engine coolant <sup>4</sup>	5.8 quarts (5.5L) <sup>5</sup>	Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VC-3DIL-B (US)</li> <li>• CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2</li> </ul>



Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2
Fuel tank	12.4 gallons (47L)	—	—

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

<sup>2</sup> Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C945-A, SAE 5W-20, and display the API Certification Mark.

<sup>3</sup> Your engine has been designed to be used with Ford engine oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of your engine. Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

<sup>4</sup> Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>5</sup> Indicates only approximate dry fill capacity. Some applications may vary.

## 258 Capacities and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT® PART NUMBERS

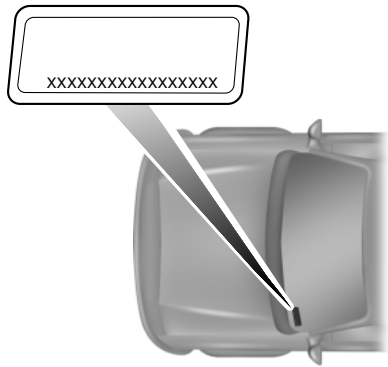
Component	1.6L engine
Air filter element	FA-1904
Oil filter	FL-910S <sup>1</sup>
Battery	BXT-96R-500
Spark plugs	<sup>2</sup>
Cabin air filter	FP69
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2601-PF (driver side) WW-1601-PF (passenger side)

<sup>1</sup>Only use the specified replacement oil filter. The use of a non-specified oil filter can result in engine damage.

<sup>2</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance Information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Note:** Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

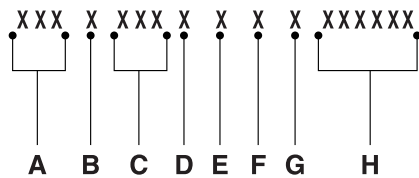
**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**



The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

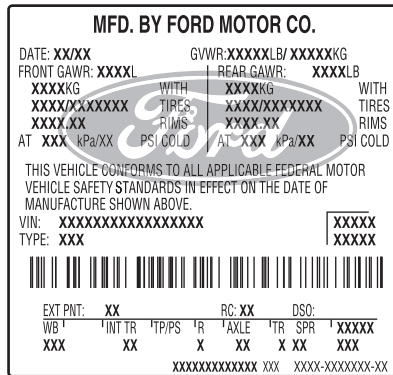
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:



- A. World manufacturer identifier
- B. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
- C. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D. Engine type
- E. Check digit
- F. Model year

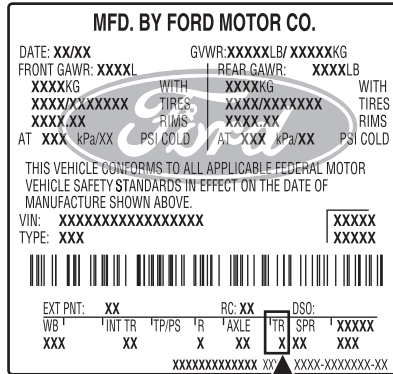
- G. Assembly plant
- H. Production sequence number

**VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL**



The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

**TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION**



You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

Description	Code
Five-speed manual transmission	C
Six-speed automatic transmission	A

**ACCESSORIES**

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at:

**Accessories.Ford.com** (U.S. only).

Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

**Exterior style**

- Bug shields
- Deflectors
- Graphics kit
- Splash guards
- Spoilers
- Wheels
- Rear bumper protector
- Body kit\*

**Interior style**

- Ambient lighting kit
- Floor mats
- Lighted sill plates
- Illuminated shift knob\*
- Arm rest\*

**Lifestyle**

- Ash cup / smoker's package
- Cargo net\*
- Roof racks and carriers\*

**Peace of mind**

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start
- Wheel locks
- Bumper mounted parking sensors\*
- Seat covers\*
- Car covers\*

\*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and/or a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the amateur radio antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner, may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

**FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)**

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

**PremiumCare** – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

**ExtraCare** – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare** – Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare** – Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.**

***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs**, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

**Protect Yourself From the Rising Cost of Vehicle Repairs With a Ford Extended Service Plan**

To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377, and don't forget to ask about our interest free payment program, allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. Your pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassels!

Or, mail your name, address, city, state and zip code to:

Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933



**FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)**

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers. The Lincoln Maintenance Protection Plan is honored at authorized Lincoln dealers.

**Note:** Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage.

This information is subject to change.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

**GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION****Why Maintain Your Vehicle?**

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with the vehicle.

Regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle have been established based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is keep your cost of owning the vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet the specifications identified in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

**Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?*****Factory-Trained Technicians***

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians, have received. Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

***Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts***

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft® and Ford-authorized branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12000 mile (20000 kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty. If you do not use Ford authorized parts, they may not meet Ford specifications and, depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

***Convenience***

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping.

They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** Not all dealers have extended hours or bodyshops. Please contact your dealer for details.

### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with a message center which displays a message at the proper oil change service interval; the interval is one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) under normal driving conditions. When ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED appears in the message center display, it's time for an oil change; the oil change must be done within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing. The oil minder system must be reset after each oil change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

If your message center is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the using only genuine Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured replacement for parts because they are engineered for your vehicle.

**Additives and Chemicals**

Ford Motor Company recommended additives and chemicals are listed in the Owner Manual and in the Ford Workshop Manual. Additional chemicals or additives not approved by Ford and are not recommended as part of normal maintenance. Please consult your *Warranty Manual* for complete warranty information.

**Oils, fluids and flushing**

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and/or foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

**Owner Checks and Services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed every month or at six months intervals.

<b>Check Every Month</b>
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.
<b>Check Every Six Months</b>
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.

<b>Check Every Six Months</b>
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

**Multi-point Inspection**

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

<b>Multi-point Inspection</b>	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (if equipped)	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation

\*Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, manual and automatic transmission and window washer.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!



**NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG**

Your vehicle is equipped with a oil minder system that indicates when the engine oil should be changed under normal operating conditions. This means you won't have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule; the vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE NEXT SERVICE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED in the message center.

Normal Scheduled Maintenance*	
Every 10000 miles (16000 km) or 12 months	Change engine oil and filter.**
	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).
	Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements.
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
	Inspect cabin air filter.
	Inspect engine cooling system strength and hoses.
	Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
	Inspect half-shaft boots.
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

\*Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

\*\*Reset your oil minder system after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Additional Maintenance Items <sup>1</sup>	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
Every 97500 miles (156000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. <sup>2</sup>
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
At 150000 miles (240000 km)	Replace timing belt if not replaced within the last 150000 miles (240000 km). <sup>4</sup>
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.
	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km).

<sup>1</sup> Additional maintenance items can be performed within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last oil change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (180000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

<sup>3</sup> Perform a follow-up inspection at 120000 miles (192000 kilometers).

<sup>4</sup> Failure to replace belt can cause internal engine damage.



**Maintenance Schedule Log**

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

**Scheduled Maintenance**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

275

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>

**SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS**

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform additional maintenance as indicated. If you **occasionally** operate your vehicle under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

<b>Using a camper or car-top carrier</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.*

\*Reset your oil life monitor system after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

<b>Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances as in Heavy Commercial use (i.e. Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 300 hours of engine operation*	Change engine oil and filter.**
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

\*Engine hour meter installation is recommended for these conditions.

\*\*Reset your oil life monitor system after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

<b>Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*

\*Reset your oil life monitor system after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Special Operating Condition Log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

**Scheduled Maintenance**

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

**EXCEPTIONS**

**California fuel filter replacement:** If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

**Hot climate oil change intervals:** Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers). If the available API "SM" or "SN" oils are not available, then the oil change service interval is 3000 miles (4800 kilometers).

**Engine air filter & cabin air filter replacement:** Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

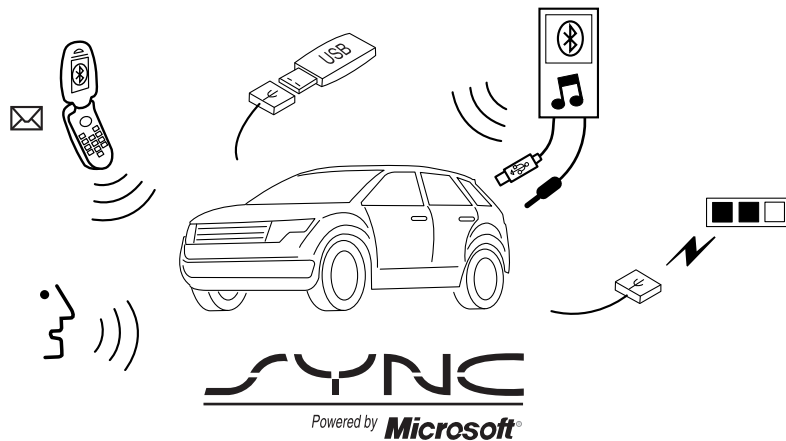
**ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD**

Initial change	Six years or 100000 miles (160000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every three years or 50000 miles (80000 km)

Engine Coolant Change Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>





SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your portable music player
- Use 911 Assist®, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services (Traffic, Directions & Information) (if equipped)
- Use applications such as Pandora and Stitcher via SYNC AppLink™ (if applicable)
- Access phonebook contacts and music via voice commands
- Stream music from your connected phone
- Text message
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- USB device charging (if your device supports this)

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

Ensure that you review your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.

**Support**

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30 am-8pm EST

In the United States, call: 1-888-270-1055

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

**Driving Restrictions**

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Safety Information**

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC, do not:

- Operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Leave playing devices in the vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's user guide for further information.
- Attempt to service or repair the system. See your authorized dealer.

**Privacy Information**

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete it and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle’s SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist® (if equipped), Vehicle Health Report (if equipped), and Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped).

**USING VOICE RECOGNITION**

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

**Initiating a Voice Session**



Push the voice icon; a tone sounds and “Listening” appears in the display. Say any of the following:

Say:	If you want to:
“Phone”	Make calls.
“USB”	Access the device connected to your USB port.

<b>Say:</b>	<b>If you want to:</b>
“Bluetooth Audio”	Stream audio from your phone.
“Line in”	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
“Cancel”	Cancel the requested action.
“SYNC”	Return to the main menu.
“Voice settings”	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
“Vehicle Health Report”	Run a vehicle health report.*
“Services”	Access the SYNC Services portal.*
“Mobile Apps”	Access mobile applications.*
“Help”	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

\*If equipped, U.S. only

### System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Push the voice icon; when prompted, say “Voice settings”, then any of the following:

<b>When you say:</b>	<b>The system:</b>
“Interaction mode standard”	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.
“Interaction mode advanced”	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. (For example, the system may ask “Phone, is that correct?”) If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

“Confirmation prompts on”
“Confirmation prompts off”

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, you may be prompted with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, “Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home.” Or, “Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe.”

“Phone candidate lists on”
“Phone candidate lists off”
“Media candidate lists on”
“Media candidate lists off”

### **Helpful Hints**

- Make sure the interior of the vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and “Listening” appears before saying a command. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

---

**USING SYNC WITH YOUR PHONE**

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call
- Ending a call
- Using privacy mode
- Dialing a number
- Redialing
- Call waiting notification
- Caller ID

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, refer to your phone's user manual and visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

**Pairing a Phone for the First Time**

**Note:** SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 2,000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and the transmission is in P (Park).

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Press the phone button; when the display indicates no phone is paired, press OK.
2. When Add Bluetooth Device appears, press OK.
3. When Find SYNC appears in the display, press OK.
4. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.
5. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display.
6. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
7. Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), downloading your phone book, etc.

**Pairing Subsequent Phones**

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and that the transmission is in P (Park).

1. Press the phone button and scroll until System Settings is selected.
2. Press OK and scroll until Bluetooth Devices is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll until Add Bluetooth Device is selected and press OK.
4. When Find SYNC appears in the display, press OK.
5. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.
6. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
7. The system then prompts with questions such as if you would like to set the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), download your phone book, etc.

**Phone Voice Commands**



Press the voice icon and say "Phone". Say any of the following:

<b>"PHONE"</b>
"Call <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Call <name> on mobile OR cell" <sup>1</sup>
"Call <name> on other" <sup>1</sup>
"Phone book <name> at home" <sup>2</sup>
"Phone book <name> on mobile OR cell" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history outgoing" <sup>2</sup>
"Phone book <name> on Other" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history missed" <sup>2</sup>
"Menu" <sup>2,3</sup>
"Join"
"Call <name> at home" <sup>1</sup>
"Call <name> at work" OR "Call <name> in office" <sup>1</sup>
"Dial" <sup>1,4</sup>

<b>“PHONE”</b>
“Phone book <name>” <sup>2</sup>
“Phone book <name> at work” OR “Phone book <name> at office” <sup>2</sup>
“Call history incoming” <sup>2</sup>
“Connections” <sup>2</sup>
“Go to privacy”
“Hold”

<sup>1</sup>These commands do not require you to say “Phone” first.

<sup>2</sup>These commands are not available until phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

<sup>3</sup>See “MENU” table below

<sup>4</sup>See “DIAL” table below

<b>“MENU”</b>
“(Phone) connections” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (message) notification off” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (message) notification on” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3” <sup>*</sup>
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer off” <sup>*</sup>
“Battery”
“Phone name”
“Signal”
“Text message inbox”

<sup>\*</sup>Words in ( ) are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.



**Phone book commands:** When you ask SYNC® to access a phone book name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the display to view. Press the phone button and say “Call” to call the contact.

<b>“DIAL”</b>
“411” (four-one-one), “911” (nine-one-one), etc.
“700 (seven hundred)” (seven hundred)
“800 (eight hundred)” (eight hundred)
“900 (nine hundred)” (nine hundred)
“#” “/” (pound, slash)
“<number> 0-9”
“Asterisk” (*)
“Clear” (deletes all entered digits)
“Delete” (deletes one digit)
“Plus”
“Star”

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press MENU to go to the PHONE menu.

**Making Calls**

Press the voice icon and when prompted say:

1. Say “Call <name>” or “Dial”, then the desired number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say “Dial” again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say “Delete” or press the left arrow button. To erase all spoken digits, say “Clear” or press and hold the left arrow button.

To end the call, press and hold the phone button.

**Receiving Calls**

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the phone button.
- Reject the call by pressing and holding the phone button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

### Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have additional menu features which become available such as putting a call on hold, joining calls, etc. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

To access:

1. Press MENU during an active call.
2. When Active Call Menu is selected, press OK.
3. Scroll to cycle through the following options:

When you select:	You can:
<b>Mute Call?</b>	Mute the call.
<b>Privacy</b>	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. Press OK when Privacy on/off appears. (The display indicates In Privacy and the system transfers your call.)
<b>Call Hold</b>	Put an active call on hold. Press OK when Hold on/off appears. To answer another call at this time, press the phone button.
<b>Enter Tones</b>	Enter “tones” such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.
<b>Join Calls</b>	Join two separate calls. 1. Press the phone button. 2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press MENU. 3. Scroll until Join Calls appears and press OK. Press OK again when Join Calls? appears. <b>Note:</b> SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty/conference call.
<b>Phonebook</b>	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your phonebook contacts. 2. Press OK again when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Call History</b>	Access your call history log. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the selection.
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

**Accessing Features through the Phone Menu**

SYNC's phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phone book and send text messages as well as access phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as 911 Assist®, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When you select:	You can:
<b>Phone Redial</b>	Redial the last number called (if available). Press OK to select, then press OK again to confirm.
<b>Call History<sup>1</sup></b>	Allows you to access any previously dialed, received or missed calls while your phone has been connected to the system. 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select from Call History Incoming, Call History Outgoing or Call History Missed. Press OK make your selection. 3. Press OK or the phone button to call the desired selection. <b>Note:</b> The system attempts to automatically re-download your phone book and call history each time your phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone supports this feature).

When you select:	You can:
<b>Phonebook</b> <sup>1,2</sup>	Allows you to access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press OK to confirm and enter. If your phonebook has fewer than 255 listings, they appear alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories. 2. Scroll until the desired contact appears, then press OK. 3. Press OK or the phone button.
<b>Text Message</b> <sup>1</sup>	Enables you to send, download and delete text messages.
<b>Phone Settings</b> <sup>1</sup>	Allows you to view your phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phone book entries and automatically download your cellular phone among other features.
<b>SYNC Services</b> <sup>3</sup>	Access the SYNC services portal where you can request various types of information, traffic reports and directions.
<b>911 Assist</b> <sup>4</sup>	Place an emergency call to a 911 operator for you after an accident (if the feature is used properly).
<b>Vehicle Health Report</b> <sup>3</sup>	Create and receive a diagnostic report card on your vehicle.
<b>Mobile Apps</b> <sup>3</sup>	Interact with SYNC®-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.
<b>System Settings</b>	Access Bluetooth Devices menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
<b>Exit Phone Menu</b>	Exit the phone menu by pressing OK.

<sup>1</sup>This is a phone-dependent feature.

<sup>2</sup>This is a phone-dependent and speed-dependent feature.

<sup>3</sup>If equipped, U.S. only.

<sup>4</sup>If equipped, U.S. and Canada only.

### **Text Messaging**

**Note:** This is a phone-dependent feature.

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

#### ***Receiving a Text Message***

**Note:** This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.

**Note:** Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature and can only be done when the vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

**Note:** Only one recipient is allowed per text message.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the display indicates you have a new message. You have these options:

1. Press the voice button, wait for the prompt and say "Read Message" to have SYNC read the message to you.
2. Press OK to receive and open the text message or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Press OK again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose whether you'd like to reply or forward the message.
3. Press OK and scroll to choose between:
  - Reply to Text Message: Press OK to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
  - Forward Text Message: Press OK to forward the message to anyone in your Phonebook or Call History. You can also choose Enter Number.

#### ***Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages***

Text messaging is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until Text Message appears and press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

**Send Text Message?** enables you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.

**Download Unread Msgs** allows you to download your unread messages (only) to SYNC. To download the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates your messages are being downloaded. When complete, SYNC takes you to your inbox.

**Delete All Messages?** allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC (not your phone). To delete the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted and SYNC returns you to the text message menu.

**Note:** SYNC does not automatically download all of your unread text messages at every ignition cycle (as it does with call history and phonebook if automatic download is set to on).

**Return** exits the current menu when you press OK.

If you select **Send Text Message?**:

1. Press OK to select. If the system detects your phone does not support this feature, "Unsupported" appears in the display and SYNC returns to the main menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through the following options:

Pre-defined text message options
Be there in 10 minutes
Be there in 20 minutes
Call me
Call you later
Can't talk right now
Can't wait to see you
I love you
I need more directions
I'm stuck in traffic
No
Thanks
Too funny
Where R you?
Why?
Yes

1. Press OK when the desired selection is in the display. The system now needs to know who to send the message to.
2. Scroll to cycle through Phonebook or Call History entries. You can also select Enter Number to audibly enter a desired number.
3. Press OK to enter the desired menu and scroll to select the specific contact.
4. Press OK when the contact appears and press OK again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with the following signature: "This message was sent from my <Ford or Lincoln>".

**Accessing Your Phone Settings**

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone, text message notification, modify your phone book and also set up automatic download.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until Phone Settings appears, then press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

When you select:	You can:
<b>Phone Status</b>	See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected phone. Press OK to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press OK again to return to the phone status menu.
<b>Set Ringer</b>	Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your phone's). 1. Press OK to select and scroll to hear Ringer 1, Ringer 2, Ringer 3 and Phone Ringer. 2. Press OK to select. <b>Note:</b> If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringer sounds when Phone Ringer is chosen.
<b>Message Notification</b>	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. 1. Press OK to select and scroll between Message Notification On or Message Notification Off. 2. Press OK to select.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Modify Phonebook</b>	<p>Modify the contents of your phone book (i.e. add, delete, download). Press OK to select and scroll between:</p> <p>Add Contacts: Press OK to add more contacts from your phone book. “Push” the desired contact(s) on your phone. Refer to your phone’s user guide on how to ‘push’ contacts.</p> <p>Delete Phonebook: Press OK to delete the current phone book and call history. When Delete Phonebook appears, press OK to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the Phone Settings menu.</p> <p>Download Phonebook: Press OK to select and press OK again when Confirm Download? appears.</p>
<b>Auto Download</b>	<p>Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC. Press OK to select. When Auto Download On? appears, press OK to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time.</p> <p>Select Off to NOT download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Downloading times are phone- and quantity-dependent.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When auto download is on, any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download are deleted.</p>
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.



**System Settings**

System Settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect, delete and set a phone as “primary” as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

**Bluetooth Devices Menu Options**

This menu allows you to add, connect, delete, set a phone as primary, and turn Bluetooth on or off.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and press OK.
3. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears and select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

<b>If you select:</b>	<b>You can:</b>
<b>Add Bluetooth Device*</b>	Pair additional phones to the system. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select, then again when Find SYNC appears in the display.</li> <li>2. Follow the directions in your phone’s user guide to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display.</li> <li>3. When prompted on your phone’s display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC.</li> <li>4. When Set As Primary Phone? appears, press OK. Scroll to toggle between Yes and No, then press OK.</li> <li>5. Depending on the functionality of your phone, you may be asked additional questions (i.e. if you would like to download your phonebook). Scroll and use OK to select your responses.</li> </ol>

If you select:	You can:
<b>Connect Bluetooth Device</b>	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press OK to select and view a list of previously paired phones. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen, then press OK to connect the phone. <b>Note:</b> Only one device can be connected at a time. When another phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.
<b>Set As Primary Phone?</b>	Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. Press OK to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press OK to confirm <b>Note:</b> SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When a phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an *.
<b>Set Bluetooth On/Off</b>	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press OK and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. <b>Note:</b> Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates all Bluetooth features.
<b>Delete Device</b>	Delete a paired phone. Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.
<b>Delete All Devices</b>	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press OK to select.
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

\*This is a speed-dependent feature.

**Advanced Menu Options**

This menu allows you to access settings such as prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and press OK.
3. Scroll until Advanced appears and select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

<b>If you select:</b>	<b>You can:</b>
<b>Prompts</b>	Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off: 1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
<b>Languages</b>	Choose between English, Francais and Espanol. Once selected, all of SYNC's radio displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
<b>Factory Defaults</b>	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). 1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when Restore Defaults? appears in the display. 2. Press OK to confirm.

If you select:	You can:
<b>Master Reset</b>	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Press OK to select. The display indicates when complete and SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
<b>Install Application?</b>	Install applications you have downloaded. Press OK and scroll to select. Press OK to confirm.
<b>System Info</b>	Access the Auto Version number as well as the FDN number. Press OK to select.
<b>MAP Profile</b>	This is a Bluetooth component which can further help your phone with the exchange of text messages.
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

#### SYNC APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

- SYNC Services (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides access to traffic, directions and information such as travel, horoscopes, stock prices and more.
- 911 Assist®: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- Vehicle Health Report (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides a diagnostic and maintenance report card of your vehicle.
- SYNC AppLink™: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications such as Pandora and Stitcher (if your phone is compatible).

**911 Assist®**

**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on prior to a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in the vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a collision. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, ensure that you read the 911 Assist privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If 911 Assist is turned on or off by any user, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, a voice message plays and/or a display message/icon comes on when the vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. For more information about 911 Assist, visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

- For information on airbag deployment, refer to the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter.
- For information on the fuel pump shut-off, refer to the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

**Setting 911 Assist On**

Perform the following:

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until 911 Assist is selected.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.
4. Scroll to select between On and Off selections.
5. Press OK when the desired option appears in the radio display. Set On or Set Off appears in the display as confirmation.

Off selections include: Off with reminder and Off without reminder. Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start. Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- A Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone has to be paired and connected to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**In the Event of a Crash**

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would activate 911 Assist); however, if 911 Assist is triggered, SYNC tries to contact emergency services. If a connected phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. Failure to cancel the call results in SYNC attempting to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: “SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.”

If the call is not cancelled and a successful call is made, a pre-recorded message is played for the 911 operator, then the occupant(s) in the vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

**911 Assist May Not Work If**

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware was damaged in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) paired and connected to the system was thrown from the vehicle.

**911 Assist Privacy Notice**

Once 911 Assist is set on, it may disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

**Vehicle Health Report**

**WARNING:** Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems that are electronically monitored by the vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (i.e., brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

**Note:** Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

**Note:** This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Before running a report, review *Vehicle Health Report privacy notice*.

**Note:** In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com). After registering you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to automatically remind you to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of diagnostic report card. The vehicle health report contains valuable information such as:

- Vehicle Diagnostic Information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open Recalls and Field Service Actions
- Unserviced items from vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer

You can run a report (after the vehicle has been running a minimum of 60 seconds) by pressing the voice button and saying "Vehicle health report", or pressing the phone button.

To run a report using the phone button:

1. Press the phone button to enter Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until Vehicle Health is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

<b>Vehicle Health Report options</b>	
<b>User Preferences:</b> <b>Press OK to select and enter the menu.</b> <b>Scroll to select from:</b>	<b>Automatic Reports:</b> Press OK and select on or off. Select "On" to have SYNC automatically prompt you to run a health report at certain mileage intervals. <b>Note:</b> You must first turn this feature on before you can select the mileage intervals at which you would like to be prompted.
	<b>Mileage Intervals:</b> Press OK. Scroll to select between 5000, 7500 or 10000 mile intervals and press OK to make your selection.
	<b>Return:</b> Press OK to exit the menu.



Vehicle Health Report options	
<b>Run Report</b>	Press OK for SYNC to run a health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it is combined with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls and other field service actions and un-serviced vehicle inspection items from your authorized dealer.

**Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice**

When you run a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect additional vehicle information. Ford may use the vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com). Refer to [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com) - Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement - for more information.

**SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI)**

**Note:** SYNC Services requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com) to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. Refer to the *Phone features* for pairing instructions.

**Note:** This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Make sure your mobile phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

**Note:** The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

**Note:** When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request and for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at [www.SYNCMYRIDE.com](http://www.SYNCMYRIDE.com). If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect the vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not activate or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit [www.SYNCMYRIDE.com](http://www.SYNCMYRIDE.com).

#### ***Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands***

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you're connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say "Services" to return to the services main menu or for help, say "Help".

#### ***Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Phone Menu***

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until *Services* appears in the display.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the Services menu. The display indicates the system is connecting.
4. Press OK. SYNC initiates the call to the services portal.
5. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service such as Traffic or Directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
6. To return to the services menu, say "Services" or for help, say "Help".

---

**Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions**

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say “Directions” or “Business search”. To find the closest business or type of business to your current location just say “Business search” and then “Search near me”. If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say “Operator” at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. You may also be prompted to speak with an operator when the automatic system has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist visit [www.SYNCMYride.com/support](http://www.SYNCMYride.com/support).
2. Follow the voice prompts to select your destination. Once your destination is selected, your current vehicle location is uploaded and a route based on current traffic conditions is calculated and sent back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call is automatically ended. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel towards you destination.
3. While on an active route, you can select or say “Route summary” or “Route status” to view the Route Summary turn list or the Route Status ETA. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, “Yes” when prompted and a new route will be delivered to your vehicle.

**Disconnecting from SYNC Services**

1. Press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Good-bye” from the SYNC Services main menu.

<b>SYNC Services Quick Tips</b>	
<b>Personalizing</b>	You can personalize your services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points such as, work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams or a news category. To learn more, log onto <a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.com">www.SYNCMyRide.com</a> .
<b>Push to interrupt</b>	Press the voice button at any time (while you are connected to SYNC TDI Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report), wait for the listening tone, and say your voice command.
<b>Portable</b>	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with Traffic, Directions and Information and continue enjoying your personalized services. You can even access your account outside the vehicle. Just use the number on your phone's call history. Traffic and Directions features do not function properly but information services and the 411 connect and text message features are available.

**SYNC AppLink™**

**Note:** Your smartphone must be paired and connected to SYNC to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone® users need to connect the phone to the USB port in order to start the application. It is recommended to lock your iPhone® after starting an application.

**Note:** The AppLink feature is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFord Touch® or MyLincoln Touch™ system.

Depending on your display type, you can access AppLink from the media menu, the phone menu, or by using voice commands. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

**To Access Using the Phone Menu**

1. Press the phone button to access the SYNC phone menu on-screen.
2. Scroll to Mobile Apps and press OK to access a list of available applications.
3. Scroll through the list of available applications and press OK to select a particular app.
4. Once an app is running through SYNC, you can access an app's menu by pressing the MENU button to first access the SYNC menu.
5. Select "SYNC-Media" by pressing OK.
6. Scroll until "<App name> Menu" is displayed (i.e. Pandora Menu), then press OK. From here you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up, Thumbs down, etc. For more information, please visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com).

**To Access Using the Media Menu**

1. Press AUX button on the center console.
2. Press MENU to access the SYNC menu.
3. Select "SYNC-Media" by pressing OK.
4. Then scroll to Mobile Apps and press OK to access a list of available applications.
5. Scroll through the list of available applications and press OK to select a particular app.
6. Once an app is running through SYNC, you can access an app's menu by pressing the MENU button to first access the SYNC menu.
7. Select "SYNC-Media" by pressing OK.
8. Scroll until "<App name> Menu" is displayed (i.e. Pandora Menu), then press OK. From here you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up, Thumbs down, etc. For more information, please visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com).

**To Access Using Voice Commands**

1. Press the voice icon.
2. When prompted, say "Mobile Apps".
3. Say the name of the application after the tone.
4. The app should start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, such as "Play Station Quickmix". Say "Help" to discover available voice commands.

---

**USING SYNC WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER**

You can access and play music from your digital music player over the vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories such as artists, albums, etc.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, "Plays from device" players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

**Connecting Your Digital Media Player via the USB Port**

**Note:** If your digital media player has a power switch, ensure that the device is turned on.

To connect using voice commands:

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice icon and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

To connect using the system menu:

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.
2. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
3. Scroll until Select Source appears and press OK.
4. Scroll to select USB and press OK.
5. Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, Indexing may appear in the radio display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the Play Menu.
6. Press OK and scroll through selections of:
  - Play All
  - Albums
  - Genres
  - Playlists
  - Tracks
  - Explore USB
  - Similar Music
  - Return

When the desired selection appears in the display, press OK to build your desired music selection.

**What's Playing?**



At any time when a track is playing, you can press the voice icon and ask the system, "What's playing?". The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the playing track to you.

**Media Voice Commands**



Press the voice icon and, when prompted, say "USB" then any of the following:

"USB"
"Autoplay off"
"Autoplay on"
"(Phone) (Media) (Bluetooth) Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Play all"
"Play artist <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Play genre <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Play next folder" <sup>2</sup>
"Play next track"
"Play playlist <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Play previous folder" <sup>2</sup>
"Play previous track"
"Play song <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Play track <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Refine album <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Refine artist <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Refine song <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Refine track <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Repeat off"
"Repeat on"
"Search album <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Search artist <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>
"Search genre <name>" <sup>1,3</sup>

<b>“USB”</b>
“Search song <name>” <sup>1</sup>
“Search track <name>” <sup>1,3</sup>
“Shuffle off”
“Shuffle on”
“Similar music”
“What’s playing?”

<sup>1</sup>“<name>” is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of any desired group, artist, etc.

<sup>2</sup>Voice commands which are only available in folder mode. For more information, refer to *Exploring the USB device* later in this chapter.

<sup>3</sup>Voice commands which are not available until indexing is complete.

<b>Voice Command Guide</b>	
<b>“Autoplay”</b>	Turn on to listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process. Turn off and the system does not begin to play any of your music until all media has all been indexed. Indexing times can vary from device to device and also with regard to the number of songs being indexed.
<b>“Search/Play Genre”</b>	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player.
<b>“Similar Music”</b>	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
<b>“Search/Play Artist/Track/Album”</b>	The system searches for a specific artist/track/album from the music indexed through the USB port.



<b>Voice Command Guide</b>	
<b>“Refine”</b>	This allows you to make your previous command more specific. For example, if you asked to search and play all music by a certain artist, you could then say “refine album” and choose a specific album from the list to view. If you then select Play, the system only plays music from that specific album.

Press the voice icon and when prompted say “Bluetooth Audio” and then any of the following:

<b>“BLUETOOTH AUDIO”</b>
“(Phone) (Media) (Bluetooth) Connections”
“Pause”
“Play”
“Play next track ”
“Play previous track ”

**Media Menu Features**

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music (by artist, genre, shuffle, repeat, etc.), and also to add, connect or delete devices.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

<b>When you select:</b>	<b>You can:</b>
<b>Play Menu</b>	Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlists, tracks, similar music or to simply, play all. You can also choose to Explore USB to view the supported digital music files on your playing device. Refer to Play Menu later in this section for more information.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Select Source</b>	Select and play music from your USB port, auxiliary input jack (line in) or stream music from your Bluetooth-enabled phone. Press OK to select, then scroll to choose from:
	USB: Press OK to access music plugged into your USB port. You can also plug in devices to charge them (if supported by your device). Once connected, the system indexes any readable media files. (The time required to complete this depends on the size of the media content being indexed.) If Autoplay is on, you can access media files randomly as they are indexed. If turned off, indexed media is not available until the indexing process is complete. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if the maximum indexing file size is reached.
	<b>Bluetooth Audio:</b> This is a phone-dependent feature which allows you to stream music playing on your Bluetooth-enabled phone. If supported by your device, you can press SEEK to play the previous or next track.
	<b>Line in:</b> Press OK to select and play music from your portable music player over the vehicle's speakers. <b>Note:</b> If you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Media Settings</b>	<p>Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Autoplay settings. Once these selections are turned on, they remain on until turned off.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately. Press OK to select and then scroll to choose from:</p> <p><b>Shuffle:</b> Press OK to shuffle available media files in the current playlist. <b>Note:</b> To shuffle all media tracks, you must select Play All in the Play Menu and then select Shuffle.</p> <p><b>Repeat:</b> Press OK to repeat any song.</p> <p><b>Autoplay:</b> Press OK to listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process.</p> <p>Press SEEK to play the previous or next track.</p>
<b>Mobile Apps</b>	<p>Interact with SYNC®-capable mobile applications on your smart phone. Refer to <i>SYNC® AppLink™</i> earlier in this chapter for more information.</p>
<b>System Settings</b>	<p>Access Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Refer to System Settings for more information.</p>
<b>Exit Media Menu</b>	<p>Press OK to exit the media menu.</p>

### Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

1. Make sure that your device is plugged into the USB port and is turned on.
2. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
3. Scroll to select the Play Menu and press OK.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select from:

When you select:	You can:
<b>Play All</b>	Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order. Press OK to select. The first track title appears in the display.
<b>Artists</b>	Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then play all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are less than 255 indexed artist, they are listed alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are categorized in alphabetical categories. 1. Press OK to select. You can select to play All Artists or any indexed artist. 2. Scroll until the desired artist is chosen and press OK.
<b>Albums</b>	Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are less than 255 indexed albums, they are listed alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories. 1. Press OK to enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album. 2. Scroll until the desired album is chosen and press OK.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Genres</b>	Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories. Press OK to select and then scroll to select the desired genre and press OK.
<b>Playlists</b>	Access your playlists (from formats such as ASX, .M3U, .WPL, .MTP.). The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, they are organized into alphabetical categories. Press OK to select. Then scroll to select the desired playlist and press OK.
<b>Tracks</b>	Search for and play a specific track which has been indexed. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories. Press OK to select. Then scroll to select the desired track and press OK.
<b>Explore USB</b>	Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible. Press OK to select. Then scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.

When you select:	You can:
<b>Similar Music</b>	<p>Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you.</p> <p>Press OK to select. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begin playing. The metadata tags must be populated for this feature to include each track.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks won't be available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in "Mass Storage Device Mode", they are available in voice recognition, play menu browsing and similar music. Unknowns are placed into any unpopulated metadata tag.</p>
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

### System Settings

System settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features.

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete a device as turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.

Your Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

#### **Bluetooth Devices Menu Options**

This menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as turn Bluetooth on and off.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and select OK.
3. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears.

4. Press OK and then scroll to select from:

<b>When you select:</b>	<b>You can:</b>
<b>Add Bluetooth Device*</b>	Allows you to pair additional devices to the system. 1. Press OK to select and press OK again when Find SYNC appears in the display. 2. Follow the directions in your phone's user guide to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display. 3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.
<b>Connect Bluetooth Device</b>	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press OK to select and view a list of devices. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen and press OK to connect the device.
<b>Set Bluetooth On/Off</b>	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press OK and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates Bluetooth features.
<b>Delete Device</b>	Delete a paired media device. Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.
<b>Delete All Devices</b>	Delete all previously paired devices. Press OK to select.
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

\*This is a speed-dependent feature

**Advanced Menu Options**

This menu allows you to access settings such as prompts, language, performing a master reset as well as returning to factory defaults.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to access the Media Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and select OK.
3. Scroll until Advanced appears.
4. Press OK and then scroll to select from the following:

<b>When you select:</b>	<b>You can:</b>
<b>Prompts</b>	<p>Have SYNC guide you via questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off.</li> <li>2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol>
<b>Languages</b>	<p>Choose from English, Francais and Espanol. The displays and prompts are in the selected language.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages.</li> <li>2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display.</li> <li>3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol>
<b>Factory Defaults</b>	<p>Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when Restore Defaults? appears in the display.</li> <li>2. Press OK to confirm.</li> </ol>



When you select:	You can:
<b>Master Reset</b>	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (all phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.
<b>Application</b>	Download new software applications (if available) and then load the desired applications through your USB port. Refer to the web site for more information.
<b>Return</b>	Exit the current menu.

**TROUBLESHOOTING**

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone’s compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an on-line chat (during certain hours). Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca) for more information.

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone’s user guide regarding audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device’s battery, then trying again.

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is a phone-dependent feature, OR</li> <li>• Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>• Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</li> <li>• Try "pushing" your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.</li> <li>• Use the "SYNCmyphone" feature available on the website.</li> </ul>
The system says "Phonebook Downloaded" but my phonebook in SYNC is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your phone's capability.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try "pushing" your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.</li> <li>• If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory.</li> <li>• Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.</li> </ul>

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I'm having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is a phone-dependent feature, OR</li> <li>• Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>• Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</li> <li>• Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again.</li> <li>• Check the security and "auto accept/prompt always" settings relative to the SYNC <i>Bluetooth</i> connection on your phone.</li> <li>• Update your device's software firmware.</li> <li>• Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.</li> </ul>
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is a phone-dependent feature, OR</li> <li>• Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>• Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</li> </ul>

USB/Media issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I'm having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.</li> <li>• Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.</li> <li>• Make sure the USB cable is properly inserted into the device and the vehicle's USB port.</li> <li>• Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> </ul>
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature, OR The device is not connected.	Make sure the device is connected to SYNC and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the proper artist, song title, album or genre information, OR The file may be corrupted, OR The song may have copyright protection which does not allow it to play.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that all song details are populated.</li> <li>• Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.</li> </ul>

<b>Vehicle Health Report/Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible Cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible Solution(s)</b>
I received a text that the Vehicle Health Report is not activated.	Your account may not be activated on the website, OR You may have the wrong VIN (vehicle identification number) listed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.</li> <li>• Make sure that your VIN is correctly listed in your account.</li> </ul>
I'm unable to retrieve the report on the website, or I receive a system error.	The preferred dealer information did not load correctly.	When you register your account, you must list a preferred dealer. If one is already listed, try selecting another dealer and logging out. Log back in and change it back to your preferred dealer and retrieve the report.
I'm unable to submit a report.	This could be due to your phone's compatibility, OR Bad signal strength, OR Your phone may not be activated on the website.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Update your mobile number in your account on the website.</li> <li>• Make sure you have full signal strength and that your <i>Bluetooth</i> volume level has been turned up.</li> <li>• Try deleting your phone and performing a clean pairing.</li> </ul>
I heard a commercial when I tried to use Traffic, Directions and Information.	The phone in use is not activated, OR Your phone has ID blocker active.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.</li> <li>• Turn off ID blocker on your phone as the system recognizes you by your phone number.</li> <li>• Make sure the currently connected phone is the same one that is registered on your SyncMyRide account.</li> </ul>

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible Cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible Solution(s)</b>
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review the Phone voice commands and the Media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.</li> <li>• Be aware that SYNC's microphone is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.</li> </ul>
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved, OR The system may not be "reading" the name the same way you are saying it.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.</li> <li>• Say the song or artist exactly as they are listed. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.</li> <li>• Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".</li> <li>• If the songs are saved in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say, " Play L-O-L-A"</li> <li>• Do not use special characters in the title as the system does not recognize them.</li> </ul>

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
<p>SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.</p>	<p>You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR                      You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved, OR                      Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters, OR                      Your phonebook contacts may be saved in CAPS.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review the phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.</li> <li>• Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if a contact is saved as Joe Wilson, say “Call Joe Wilson”.</li> <li>• The system works better if you list full names such as “Joe Wilson” rather than “Joe”.</li> <li>• Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.</li> <li>• If contacts are saved in CAPS, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say, “ Call J-A-K-E.”</li> </ul>

**GENERAL INFORMATION****SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

- You have acquired a device (“DEVICE”) that includes software licensed by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation (“MS”). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“MS SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“FORD SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as “SOFTWARE.”

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (“EULA”), DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.



**DESCRIPTION OF OTHER RIGHTS AND LIMITATIONS:**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the

SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are

provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets," incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual

property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S.\$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

**End user notice****Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions**

Before using your Windows Automotive-based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual (“User’s Guide”). Not following precautions found in this User’s Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User’s Guide in Vehicle**

When kept in the vehicle, the User’s Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User’s Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.



**WARNING:** Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

**General operation****Voice Command Control**

Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen**

Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting**

Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions**

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features**

Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard**

Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail**

Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety**

Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy**

Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services**

Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

- 
- 911 Assist™ .....301
- A**
- ABS (see Brakes) .....152
- Accessing call history/phone  
book during active call .....290
- Accessing your media menu  
features .....313
- Accessing your phone menu  
features .....291
- Active call menu options .....290
- Advanced menu options ...299, 320
- Advanced menu options  
(prompts, languages, defaults,  
master reset, installing  
applications) .....299
- Airbag supplemental restraint  
system .....44  
and child safety seats .....45  
description .....44  
disposal .....54  
driver airbag .....44  
passenger airbag .....44  
side airbag .....44, 50
- Air cleaner filter .....208, 258
- Air conditioning .....113  
manual heating and air  
conditioning system .....113
- Air filter .....199
- Ambient mood/lighting .....80
- Ambulance packages .....14
- Antifreeze  
(see Engine coolant) .....200
- Anti-lock brake system  
(see Brakes) .....152
- Anti-theft system .....69
- arming the system .....69, 71  
disarming a triggered system ..71
- AppLink™ .....308
- Audio system  
Single CD .....101, 103
- Audio system  
(see Radio) .....101, 103
- Automatic transmission .....143  
fluid, adding .....202  
fluid, checking .....202  
Selectshift (SST) .....145
- Auxiliary input jack (Line in) ..108
- Auxiliary powerpoint .....126
- B**
- Battery .....199, 204  
acid, treating emergencies ....204  
jumping a disabled battery ....177  
maintenance-free .....204  
replacement, specifications ...258  
servicing .....204
- Booster seats .....21
- Brakes .....152  
anti-lock .....152  
anti-lock brake system (ABS)  
warning light .....152  
brake warning light .....152  
fluid, checking and adding ....203  
fluid, refill capacities .....255  
fluid, specifications .....255  
parking .....153  
shift interlock .....146
- C**
- Capacities for refilling fluids ....255
- CD .....101, 103
- CD player .....99



Cell phone use .....	15	Getting roadside assistance ...	175
Changing a tire .....	248	Getting the service you	
Child safety restraints .....	26	need .....	180
Child safety seats		Ordering additional owner's	
attaching with tether straps ....	28	literature .....	186
automatic locking mode		Utilizing the	
(retractor) .....	35	Mediation/Arbitration	
LATCH .....	26	Program .....	184
Child safety seats -		<b>D</b>	
booster seats .....	21	Defrost .....	113
Cleaning your vehicle .....	219	rear window .....	116
engine compartment .....	221	Dipstick	
instrument panel .....	223	automatic transmission	
interior .....	222	fluid .....	202
plastic parts .....	220	engine oil .....	199
washing .....	219	Doors	
waxing .....	221	central unlocking .....	61, 64
wheels .....	224	Driving under special	
wiper blades .....	222	conditions .....	147
Climate control (see Air		through water .....	172
conditioning or Heating) .....	113	<b>E</b>	
Clock .....	94, 101, 103	Electronic message center .....	93
Clutch		Electronic stability control .....	156
fluid .....	203	Emergencies, roadside	
fluid reservoir .....	199	jump-starting .....	177
operation while driving .....	148	running out of fuel .....	136
recommended shift speeds ....	148	Emission control system .....	140
Console .....	127	End user license agreement ....	328
Coolant .....	200	Engine .....	254
checking and adding .....	200	cleaning .....	221
recovery reservoir .....	199	coolant .....	200
refill capacities .....	255	idle speed control .....	204
specifications .....	255	lubrication specifications .....	255
Customer Assistance .....	175	refill capacities .....	255
Ford Extended Service		service points .....	199
Plan .....	263, 265	Engine block heater .....	132
Getting assistance outside			
the U.S. and Canada .....	184		

- 
- Engine fan .....198
- Engine oil  
 dipstick .....199  
 filter, specifications .....258  
 refill capacities .....255  
 specifications .....255
- Event data recording .....10
- Exhaust fumes .....132
- F**
- Fan, Engine Cooling .....198
- Flexible Fuel Vehicle  
 (FFV) .....134
- Floor mats .....173
- Fluid capacities .....255
- Fuel  
 cap .....138  
 capacity .....255  
 choosing the right fuel .....135  
 filler funnel .....136  
 filling your vehicle with fuel ..138  
 filter, specifications .....203, 258  
 fuel pump shut-off .....176  
 octane rating .....135, 254  
 quality .....135  
 running out of fuel .....136  
 safety information relating to  
 automotive fuels .....134
- Fuel and distance computer .....94  
 outside temperature  
 indicator .....94  
 to empty indicator .....94  
 trip distance .....94  
 trip/reset button .....94
- Fuel - flex fuel vehicle  
 (FFV) .....134
- Fuses .....188–189
- G**
- Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....138
- Gauges .....86  
 odometer .....94  
 trip odometer .....94
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....176
- Headlamps  
 aiming .....209  
 bulb specifications .....218  
 high beam .....77  
 replacing bulbs .....211
- Head restraints .....119
- Heating .....113
- Hill start assist .....150
- Hood .....197
- I**
- Ignition .....129, 254
- Inspection/maintenance (I/M)  
 testing .....142
- Instrument panel  
 cleaning .....223  
 cluster .....87
- Intelligent Access Key .....56
- J**
- Jack .....248  
 positioning .....248  
 storage .....248
- Joining two calls  
 (multiparty/conference call) ....290
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....177

**K**

- Keyless entry system
  - autolock .....65
- Keys .....56
  - positions of the ignition .....129

**L**

- Lamps
  - bulb replacement
    - specifications chart .....218
  - interior lamps .....79
  - replacing bulbs .....211
- LATCH anchors .....26
- Lights, warning and indicator ....87
- Load limits .....161
- Locks
  - autolock .....65
  - childproof .....31
- Lubricant specifications .....255
- Lug nuts .....253

**M**

- Manual transmission .....148
  - fluid capacities .....255
  - lubricant specifications .....255
  - reverse .....149
- Media Bluetooth menu options
 (adding, connecting, deleting,
 turning on/off) .....318
- Message center .....93
  - warning messages .....95
- Mirrors .....83–84
  - side view mirrors (power) .....83
- Moon roof .....85
- Motorcraft® parts .....219, 258

**O**

- Octane rating .....135

**P**

- Pairing other phones .....287
- Pairing your phone for the
 first time .....286
- Parking brake .....153
- Parts
 (see Motorcraft® parts) .....258
- Phone Bluetooth menu options
 (adding, connecting, deleting,
 turning on/off) .....297
- Phone redial .....291
- Playing music (by artist,
 album, genre, playlist, tracks,
 similar) .....316
- Power distribution box
 (see Fuses) .....189, 199
- Power door locks .....61
- Power mirrors .....83
- Powerpoint .....126
- Power steering .....159
- Power Windows .....81
- Privacy information .....283
- Push button start system .....129
- Putting a call on/off hold .....290

**R**

- Radio .....101, 103
  - Single CD .....101, 103
- Radio reception .....99
- Rear window defroster .....113

- 
- Receiving a text message .....293
  - Recommendations for
    - attaching safety restraints for children .....22
  - Relays .....188–189
  - Remote entry system
    - illuminated entry .....66–67
    - locking/unlocking doors .....62
    - opening the trunk .....63
    - replacing the batteries .....57
  - Roadside assistance .....175
- S**
- Safety Belt Maintenance .....40
  - Safety belts
    - (see Safety restraints) .....34, 37
  - Safety defects, reporting ..186–187
  - Safety information .....282
  - Safety restraints .....34–35, 37
    - Belt-Minder® .....37
    - extension assembly .....36
    - for adults .....34–35
    - for children .....18, 22
    - safety belt maintenance .....40
    - seat belt maintenance .....40
    - warning light and chime .....37
  - Safety restraints -
    - LATCH anchors .....26
  - Safety seats for children .....18, 22
  - Safety Compliance
    - Certification Label .....260
  - Satellite Radio .....103
  - Scheduled Maintenance Guide
    - Normal Scheduled Maintenance and Log .....271
  - Seat belts
    - (see Safety restraints) .....34
  - Seats .....124
    - child safety seats .....18, 22
    - front seats .....122
    - heated .....123
    - second row seats .....124
  - SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....69
  - Selecting your media source (USB, Line in, BT audio) .....313
  - Setting the clock .....94, 101, 103
  - Side air curtain .....51
  - Side-curtain airbags system .....51
  - SIRIUS® satellite radio .....103
  - Snowplowing .....14
  - SOS Post Crash Alert .....43
  - Spark plugs,
    - specifications .....254, 258
  - Special notice
    - ambulance conversions .....14
    - utility-type vehicles .....14
  - Specification chart,
    - lubricants .....255
  - Stability system .....156
  - Starting your vehicle .....131
    - jump starting .....177
    - push button start system .....129
  - Steering wheel .....72
    - controls .....73
    - tilting .....72
  - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) (see airbags) .....44
  - SYNC® AppLink™ .....308
  - SYNC® customer support .....282
  - SYNC® Services .....305

- 
- T**
- Temperature control  
(see Climate control) .....113
  - Text messaging .....293
  - Text messaging (sending,  
downloading, deleting) .....293, 295
  - Tilt steering wheel .....72
  - Tires .....228–229, 248
    - alignment .....242
    - care .....228
    - changing .....248
    - checking the pressure .....238
    - inflating .....236
    - label .....235
    - replacing .....240
    - rotating .....242
    - safety practices .....241
    - sidewall information .....231
    - snow tires and chains .....243
    - spare tire .....248
    - terminology .....229
    - tire grades .....229
    - treadwear .....228, 238
  - Towing .....167
    - recreational towing .....168
    - trailer towing .....167
    - wrecker .....167
  - Traction control .....154
  - Traffic, Directions and  
Information .....305
  - Transmission
    - brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....146
    - fluid, checking and adding  
(automatic) .....202
    - fluid, checking and adding  
(manual) .....203
    - fluid, refill capacities .....255
    - lubricant specifications .....255
  - Trunk .....67–68
    - remote release .....63
  - Turn signal .....78
- U**
- USB port .....109
  - Using privacy mode .....290
- V**
- Vehicle health report .....303
  - Vehicle Identification Number  
(VIN) .....259
  - Vehicle loading .....161
  - Ventilating your vehicle .....132
  - Voice commands in media  
mode .....311
  - Voice commands in phone  
mode .....287
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....87
  - Washer fluid .....204
    - reservoir .....199
  - Water, Driving through .....172
  - Windows
    - power .....81
    - rear wiper/washer .....76
  - Windshield washer fluid and  
wipers
    - checking and adding fluid ....204
    - replacing wiper blades .....207
  - Wrecker towing .....167